

DAUGAVPILS PEDAGOĢISKĀ UNIVERSITĀTE
ANĢĻU VALODAS KATEDRA

ENGLISH FOR JUNIOR STUDENTS

Part (a)

Compiled by
BRONISLAVA KALNIŅA



2000

Apstiprināts
Angļu valodas katedras sēdē
1998. gada 8. decembrī, protokols Nr. 2.

Recenzenti: Dr. paed. **Larisa Sardiko**,
Dr. philol. **Harijs Maršavs**

Grāmata "English for Junior Students" domāta universitātes jaunāko kursu studentiem jauna vārdu krājuma apgūšanai, komunikatīvo iemaņu izkopšanai un tālākveidošanai, kā arī teksta analīzes un interpretācijas prasmju attīstīšanai.

Redaktors: **Harijs Maršavs**

Teksta salicēja
un maketētāja: **Marina Stočka**

ISBN – 9984–14–101–2

© DPU izdevniecība "Saule", 2000

PREFACE

The textbook has been designed for the junior students of the Daugavpils Pedagogical University. The aims of the book are:

1. to enrich students' vocabulary;
2. to consolidate the newly acquired vocabulary items;
3. to develop students' abilities and skills in discussing appropriate problems and analysing literary texts.

The textbook consists of 10 units which include an original text, a list of phrases from the text, vocabulary items to be acquired and three types of exercises: vocabulary, text and discussion exercises.

The texts of the book and vocabulary items have been selected so that they should be thematically related to the topics included in the bachelor programmes for the junior students of the university.

The new vocabulary items are taught and consolidated with the help of vocabulary exercises which are focused on word polysemy, synonymy and phraseology. The text exercises are concerned with the comprehension of the given text and the use of the acquired vocabulary in context. Discussion exercises are aimed at developing students' speaking skills on a definite topic and using the newly learnt vocabulary items creatively in a different context. Various stories, anecdotes, puns, proverbs etc. are provided for this purpose.

Each unit of the textbook includes also a few translation exercises. Since students think in the categories of their native language, it seems appropriate that they must be given a special training to adjust their innate knowledge of their mother tongue to the norms and requirements of the English language. Here the translation exercises come in handy.

CONTENTS

Unit 1. John Galsworthy	5
Vocabulary Items	9
Vocabulary Exercises	20
Text Exercises	33
Discussion Exercises	35
Unit 2. Agatha Christie	43
Vocabulary Items	47
Vocabulary Exercises	55
Text Exercises	69
Discussion Exercises	71
Unit 3. O. Henry	79
Vocabulary Items	84
Vocabulary Exercises	99
Text Exercises	112
Discussion Exercises	113
Just for Fun	122
Unit 4. Charles Dickens	125
Vocabulary Items	130
Vocabulary Exercises	143
Text Exercises	159
Discussion Exercises	161
Just for Fun	168
Unit 5. Archibald Joseph Cronin	169
Vocabulary Items	174
Vocabulary Exercises	180
Text Exercises	190
Discussion Exercises	192
Just for Fun	199

UNIT 1

JOHN GALSWORTHY (1867–1933)

John Galsworthy was born at Coombe, Surrey, on August 14, 1867. He was the son of a solicitor and was brought up in a wealthy environment. He attended a preparatory school until he was fourteen, when he entered Harrow, remaining there until 1886. From 1886–1889 he studied law at New College, Oxford, and was called to the Bar in 1890. He did not practise law however, and spent the next two years of his life in foreign travel. Galsworthy returned to England in 1893.

He was no longer young when he started writing. Galsworthy made his name as a novelist in the first decade of our century. He kept up with the best traditions of realism in England.

Galsworthy is the author of many novels ("The Island of Pharisees", 1904; "Fraternity", 1909 etc.), short stories ("The Apple Tree", "The Broken Boot" etc.) and he is known as one of the most prominent English playwrights of his time ("The Silver Box", 1906; "Justice", 1910 etc.). The most famous work of his is the epic trilogy "The Forsyte Saga", (1906–1921). It is a series of novels connected by the history of several generations of the Forsyte family, representatives of the Victorian and Edwardian moneyed class. "The Forsyte Saga" is followed by "A Modern Comedy", 1924–1928, also a trilogy, depicting English post-war life. The final Forsytes trilogy called "End of the Chapter" was written at a later period (1934).

John Galsworthy was a novelist, dramatist, short story writer and essayist taken together. The author deals with contemporary social problems. He is critical of injustice, tyranny and all the evils of life, but his criticism is not destructive. He is a great master of creating characters. In his opinion each character should possess features typical of a certain group of society. His novels are packed with characters, most of them alive and full-blooded. The author appeals both to the reader's reason and to his heart, but at the same time there is little sentimentality to be found in his works.

Try and answer the following questions:

1. Can you find Coombe, Surrey, and Oxford on the map?
2. What can you tell of England's history and life at Galsworthy's time?
3. When did Queen Victoria reign? What was she famous for?
4. In front of what famous building is a monument to Queen Victoria erected in London?
5. What do you know of King Edward VII?
6. What periods in England's history are called Victorian and Edwardian? What are these periods characterized by?
7. What can you tell of Galsworthy's life and literary career?
8. What are the chief characteristics of Galsworthy's works?

THE APPLE TREE

(an extract)

On the first of May, after their last year together at college, Frank Ashurst and his friend Robert Garton were on a tramp. They had walked that day from Brent, intending to make Chagford, but Ashurst's football knee had given out, and according to their map they had still some seven miles to go. They were sitting on a bank beside the road, where a track crossed alongside a wood, resting the knee and talking of the universe, as young men will. Both were over six feet, and thin as rails; Ashurst pale, idealistic, full of absence; Garton queer, round-the-corner, knotted, curly, like some primeval beast. Both had a literary bent; neither wore a hat. Ashurst's hair was smooth, pale, wavy, and had a way of rising on either side of his brow, as if always being flung back; Garton's was a kind of dark unfathomed mop. They had not met a soul for miles.

"My dear fellow," Garton was saying, "pity's only an effect of self-consciousness; it's a disease of the last five thousand years. The world was happier without."

Ashurst, following the clouds with his eyes, answered:

"It's the pearl in the oyster, anyway."

"My dear chap, all our modern unhappiness comes from pity. Look at animals, and Red Indians, limited to feeling their own occasional misfortunes; then look at ourselves – never free from feeling the toothaches of others. Let's get back to feeling for nobody, and have a better time."

"You'll never practise that."

Garton pensively stirred the hotch-potch of his hair.

"To attain full growth, one mustn't be squeamish. To starve oneself emotionally's a mistake. All emotion is to the good – enriches life."

"Yes, and when it runs up against chivalry?"

"Ah! That's so English! If you speak of emotion the English always think you want something physical, and are shocked. They're afraid of passion, but not of lust – oh, no! – so long as they can keep it secret."

Ashurst did not answer; he had plucked a blue flower, and was twiddling it against the sky. A cuckoo began calling from a thorn tree. The sky, the flowers, the songs of birds! Robert was talking through his hat! And he said:

"Well, let's go on, and find some farm where we can put up."

In uttering those words, he was conscious of a girl coming down from the common just above them. She was outlined against the sky, carrying a basket, and you could see that sky through the crook of her arm. And Ashurst, who saw beauty without wondering how it could advantage him, thought: "How pretty!" The wind, blowing her dark frieze skirt against her legs, lifted her battered peacock tam-o'-shanter; her greyish blouse was worn and old, her shoes were split, her little hands rough and red, her neck browned. Her dark hair waved untidy across her broad forehead, her neck was short, her upper lip short, showing a glint of teeth, her brows were straight and dark, her lashes long and dark, her nose straight; but her grey eyes were the wonder – dewy as if opened for the first time that day. She looked at Ashurst – perhaps he struck her as strange, limping along without a hat, with his large eyes on her, and his hair flung back. He could not take off what was not on his head, but put up his hand in a salute, and said:

"Can you tell us if there's a farm near here where we could stay the night? I've gone lame."

"There's only our farm near, sir." She spoke without shyness, in a pretty soft crisp voice.

"And where is that?"

"Down here, sir."

"Would you put us up?"

"Oh! I think we would."

"Will you show us the way?"

"Yes, sir."

He limped on, silent, and Garton took up catechism.

"Are you a Devonshire girl?"

"No, sir."

"What then?"

"From Wales."

"Ah! I thought you were a Celt; so it's not your farm?"

"My aunt's, sir."

"And your uncle's?"

"He is dead."

"Who farms it, then?"

"My aunt, and my three cousins."

"But your uncle was a Devonshire man?"

"Yes, sir."

"Have you lived here long?"

"Seven years."

"And how d'you like it after Wales?"

"I don't know, sir."

"I suppose you don't remember?"

"Oh, yes! But it is different."

"I believe you."

Ashurst broke in suddenly:

"How old are you?"

"Seventeen, sir."

"And what's your name?"

"Megan David."

"This is Robert Garton, and I am Frank Ashurst. We wanted to get on to Chagford."

"It is a pity your leg is hurting you."

Ashurst smiled, and when he smiled his face was rather beautiful.

Descending past the narrow wood, they came on the farm suddenly – a long, low, stone-built dwelling with casement windows, in a farmyard where pigs and fowls and an old mare were straying. A short steep-up grass hill behind was crowned with a few Scotch firs, and in front, an old orchard of apple trees, just breaking into

flowers, stretched down to a stream and a long wild meadow. A little boy with oblique dark eyes was shepherding a pig, and by the house door stood a woman, who came towards them. The girl said:

“It is Mrs. Narracombe, my aunt.”

PHRASES

1. thin as a rail
2. the pearl in the oyster
3. to talk through one's hat
4. to have a literary bent
5. not to meet a soul
6. to starve oneself emotionally
7. to keep sth. secret
8. to take sth. up
9. to be to the good
10. to break into flower
11. full of absence

VOCABULARY ITEMS

1. **make** v – 1. construct or produce by combining parts or putting materials together; bring into existence: make sth. from / out / of sth.; sth. into sth.; make bricks, bread, a coat. She made coffee for all of us. Cloth is made of cotton, wool, silk. Wine is made from grapes. We make bottles (out) of glass. Glass is made into bottles.
2. cause to appear by breaking, tearing, removing material: to make a hole in the ground, a gap in a hedge.
3. enact, establish. The regulations were made to protect children.
4. cause to be or become. I don't want to make any trouble for you. The news made her happy. The full story was never made known / public.
5. earn; win; gain; acquire: make 5000 pounds a year. He first made his name / reputation as a junior Minister.
make one's living (at, as, by, from) – have as one's work or

livelihood. He makes his living by giving piano lessons. Can you make a living from journalism? Does he make a living at it?
 6. compel; force; persuade; cause (sb.) to do sth.; cause sth. to happen. They made me repeat (I was made to repeat) the story.

Phrases:

make one's blood boil – to anger one

make one's hair stand on end – shock or frighten one. His ghost stories made our hair stand on end.

7. come to, equal. Twelve inches make one foot. His adventures make excellent reading.

make (good, not much) sense – seem to have (plenty of, little) sense. His arguments have never made much sense.

8. turn into; turn out to be; prove to be. If you train hard you will make a good footballer. He will make an excellent husband.

Phrases:

make after sb. – pursue, chase. She made after him like a mad-woman.

make for sb. / sth. – a) move in the direction of; head for. It's late we'd better turn and make for home.

b) charge at; rush towards. The bull made for me and I had to run.

make up – a) invent, compose. The whole story is made up.

b) form, compose, constitute. Are all animal bodies made up of cells?

c) prepare, e.g. medicine, a prescription, tonic, by mixing ingredients. Ask the chemist to make this up for you.

make sb. / oneself up – prepare (an actor, oneself) for the stage; to apply cosmetics to the face. It takes him more than an hour to make up for the part of Othello. Isn't she badly made up!

make it up with sb. – end a quarrel, dispute or misunderstanding.

They quarrel every morning and make it up every evening.

Make	or	Do
make a bid for		do a translation
make the bed(s)		do a lesson / homework
make the best of		do one's duty
make some / little difference		do science

make an effort	do the flowers
make an excuse	do one's hair
make eyes at	do one's best
make a face (faces) at	do well (in a subject)
make fun of	do sb. a favour
make friends / enemies	do good / harm
make head or tail of	do sb. a service
make a good / poor job of	do sb. credit
make a mistake	do sb. justice
make a mess	have to do with
make money	
make a point of	
make room (for)	
make a secret of	
make a report	
make one's way	

make the bed – arrange the sheets, blankets, etc.

make a bed – build a bed

make-up n – cosmetics

2. bank₁ n – land along each side of a river or canal; ground near a river. A river flows between its banks. His house is on the south bank of the river.

Synonyms: *shore, bank, beach, coast.*

Shore. The land adjacent to a large lake or the sea.

E.g. The waves were quietly lapping the shore.

Bank. The strip of land on the margin of a river

E.g. Many holiday makers had pitched their tents on the banks of the river.

Beach. The part of the shore of the sea which is washed by the waves, usually sandy or pebbly.

E.g. We sunbathed on the beach all day.

Coast. The land along the sea or ocean regarded solely as a boundary between the sea and land.

E.g. We sailed along the Baltic Sea Coast last summer.

bank₂ n – 1. establishment for keeping money and valuables safely: the Bank – the Bank of England, which is used by the

British Government; have money in the bank, bank clerk, clerk working in a bank.

bank-bill n – bill drawn by one bank upon another bank.

bank-book n – (also passbook) book containing a record of a customer's bank account.

bank draft – bank bill.

bank holiday n – (GB) one of those days (not Sundays) on which banks are closed by law, usu. kept as general holidays (e.g. Good Friday, Easter Monday, Christmas Day); (US) any weekday on which banks are closed.

banknote n – piece of paper money issued by a bank.

bank-rate n – rate at which the Bank of England (or other national bank) will discount bills.

bankroll n – roll of paper money.

2. (gambling) sum of money held by the keeper of the gaming table, from which he pays his losses.

3. (place for storing) reserve supplies.

blood bank n

bank v – 1. place (money) in a bank. He banks half his salary every month.

2. bank (with), keep money in a bank. Who do you bank with.

bankrupt n – (legal) person judged by a law court to be unable to pay his debts in full, his property being distributed for the benefit of his creditors.

bankrupt adj – unable to pay one's debts: go bankrupt.

bankrupt in / of – completely without. The newspapers accused the Government of being bankrupt in ideas.

bankrupt v – make bankrupt.

bankruptcy n – bankrupt condition. There were ten bankruptcies in the town last year.

3. way n – 1. road, street, path, etc. in compounds: railway, byway.

A way across the fields. There is no way through.

pave the way for – prepare for, prepare people to accept (reforms etc.)

2. route, road (to be, used) from one place to another. Which is the best / right / quickest / shortest etc. way there / from A to B? Can you find your way home?

Phrases:

go out of one's way (to do sth.) – make a special effort. He went out of his way to be rude to me / to help me.

lead the way – go in front as leader; show by example how sth. may be done.

make one's way in life – succeed.

make one's way (to, forward) – go.

out of the way – exceptional, uncommon. He has done nothing out of the way yet.

out-of-the-way attrib. use – remote: out-of-the-way place / corner
by the way – incidentally.

on the / one's way – being engaged in going or coming. I'll buy some bread on the way / my way home. He is on the way to success.

3. method or plan; course of action: the right way (wrong, the best) to do / of doing a thing. Is this the way to do it? Do it (in) your own way if you don't like my way. The work must be finished (in) one way or another.

Phrases:

have / get one's own way – get / do what one wants.

go / take one's own way – act independently, esp. contrary to the advice of others.

4. (sg. only) distance between two points. It's a long way off / a long way from here.

work is still a long way off perfection – is far from being perfect.

5. direction. We went this / that / the other way. Look this way, please.

Phrase:

make way for – allow space or a free passage. All traffic has to make way for a fire engine.

6. condition, state, degree. Things are in a bad way. She was in a terrible way.

Synonyms: *way, road, path, track, drive.*

Way means a road, path, route leading from one place to another, and followed or to be followed in going from place to place; direction.

E.g. This is the way to our home.

Phrases: *to lose one's way; to lead the way.*

Road denotes an open way, track, a highway used as a means of communication between one place and another; usually a road is wide enough for vehicles and joins distant points.

E.g. Every city and town has many roads radiating from it in different directions.

Path is a way for passing on foot; a track beaten or trodden by the feet, often along the side of the road, a narrow way across the country, up a mountain, through woods or fields etc.

E.g. A path through a field.

Track is a line or series of marks left by a vehicle, person, animal etc. passing along; path or rough road made by persons / animals: tracks in the snow; follow the tracks left by a bear; a track through the forest.

Drive is a private road leading to a house.

4. cross n – 1. mark made by drawing one line across another, thus: x, +. The place is marked on the map with a cross.

make one's cross – put a cross on a document instead of one's signature.

2. line or stroke forming part of a letter.

3. stake or post with another piece of wood across it, as used in ancient times for crucifixion.

4. (fig) suffering; burden of sorrow: to bear one's cross; to take up one's cross.

5. emblem, in the form of a cross or a star, (to be) worn by an order of knighthood; decoration for personal valour: the Victoria Cross; the Distinguished Service Cross.

6. (place of) crossing.

cut on the cross – (dressmaking) cut diagonally. This skirt material was cut on the cross.

7. offspring of animals or plants of different sorts or breeds. A mule is a cross between a horse and an ass.

cross v – 1.

cross (from) (to) – go across; pass from one side to the other side of: to cross a road / river / bridge / the sea / the Sahara, etc.; to cross from Dover to Calais.

cross a person's path – meet him. I hope I shall never cross that man's path again.

cross one's mind – (of ideas, etc.) occur to one. The idea has just crossed my mind that ...

2. *cross (off / out / through)* – draw a line or lines across or through (to cancel). Two of the words have been crossed out.

I crossed his name off the list.

cross one's t's and dot one's i's – (fig) be careful and exact.

3. put or place across or over: to cross one's legs; to cross one's arms on one's chest.

cross sb's palm with silver – give a coin to him (esp. to a fortuneteller).

cross swords with sb. – fight or argue with him.

keep one's fingers crossed – (fig) hope for the best, that nothing will happen to upset one's plans, etc.

4. *cross oneself* – make the sign of the cross on or over oneself as a religious act, to invoke God's protection.

5. (of persons travelling, letters in the post) meet and pass. We crossed each other on the way. Our letters crossed in the post.

6. oppose or obstruct. He was angry at having his plans crossed. He crossed me in everything.

7. *cross (with)* – produce a cross by mixing breeds; (cause to) interbreed.

cross adj – 1. (colloq) badtempered; easily or quickly showing anger. Don't be cross with the child for being late. I've never heard a cross word from her lips.

2. (of winds) contrary; opposed. Strong cross winds made it difficult for the yachts to leave harbour.

crossly adv

crossness n

5. **wear** n – 1. wearing or being worn; use as clothing: a suit for everyday wear; a coat that has been in constant wear.

2. (chiefly in compounds) things to wear: underwear, footwear, ladies' / men's wear; a shop that specializes in children's wear.

wear v – 1. have on the body; (of looks) have on the face. He was wearing a hat / spectacles / a beard / a troubled look.

2. (cause to) become less useful or to be in a certain condition, by being used. I have worn my shoes into holes. This material has worn thin.

Phrases:

wear away – become thin, weak as the result of constant use. The inscription on the stone had worn away.

wear down – become gradually smaller, thinner, weaker. The heels of these shoes are wearing down.

3. endure continued use; remain in a certain condition. Good leather will wear for years.

Synonyms: *to dress, to put on, to wear.*

To dress means to put on clothes.

To put on means to place clothes on any part of our body.

To wear means to have on the body or about the person.

E.g. The man is *putting on* a necktie. The girl is *dressed* like a flower. The Scots *wear* kilts.

6. pity n – 1. feeling of sorrow for the troubles, sufferings etc. of another person: be filled with / feel pity for sb.

Phrases:

have / take pity on sb. – help sb. in trouble etc.

for pity's sake. For pity's sake try to stop this persecution.

out of pity – because of a feeling of pity: give a beggar a few coins out of pity.

2. (with indef. article, but not in pl.) cause for regret or sorrow. What a pity (that) you can't come with us! It's a pity (that) he can't swim. The pity is that ...

7. occasion n – 1. time at which a particular event takes place; right time (for sth.): on this occasion. I have met Mr. White on several occasions. This is not an occasion for laughter.

take this / that occasion to say sth. – avail oneself of the opportunity.

2. reason, cause, need. I've had no occasion to visit him recently. You have no occasion to be angry.

occasional adj – happening, coming, seen, etc. from time to time, but not regularly. He pays me occasional visits. There will be occasional showers during the day.

occasionally adv – now and then; at times. He visits me occasionally.

Synonyms: *chance, opportunity, occasion* are comparable when they mean “a convenient or favourable moment”.

Chance and opportunity are very close in meaning and occur in similar collocations: this is a good (lucky, odd) chance / opportunity. Both words occur in such phraseological expressions as: to have (give, take) a chance / an opportunity.

Chance also denotes a happening taking place unexpectedly. *E.g.* Chance brought her into his mind (by chance).

Chance also implies probability, or possibility as: a chance of success, a chance of winning.

Occasion: a) a special moment or time when something takes place.

E.g. I seldom remember the occasion of my first meeting with anyone who has subsequently become an associate or friend.

b) a special happening or event.

E.g. “Your wife has left you?” ... :She left a note to say that she was leaving me, but I don’t know where she has gone.” “This is an occasion.”

8. advantage n – 1. sth. useful or helpful; sth. likely to bring success esp. in competition: the advantages of a good education. Living in a big town has many advantages, such as good schools, libraries and theatres.

Phrases:

have / gain / win an advantage (over), give sb. an advantage (over)
– have (give etc.) a better position or opportunity. Tom’s university education gave him an advantage over boys who had not been to the university.

2. benefit; profit. He gained little advantage from his visit to London.

Phrases:

take advantage of sb. – deceive him, play a trick on him.

take advantage of sth. – use it profitably, for one’s own benefit. He always takes full advantage of the mistakes made by his rivals.

to advantage – in a way that enables sth. to be seen, used etc. in the best way. The painting is seen to better advantage from a distance.

advantage v – give an advantage to; be a benefit or aid to.

advantageous adj – profitable, helpful.

9. **lift** v – 1. raise to a higher level or position: lift (up) a table; lift sth. out of a box / a child out of his cot. This box is too heavy for me to lift (it). This piece of good luck lifted her spirits.

lift up one's eyes (to ...) – look up (at).

not lift a finger

lift up one's voice – raise it

2. *lift off* – (of a rocket, spacecraft) rise from the launching site.

3. (of clouds, fog, etc.) rise; pass away. The mist began to lift.

4. dig up (root crops); remove (plants, shrubs, etc.) from the ground: lift potatoes.

5. steal: lift articles in a supermarket.

lift n – 1. act of lifting.

give sb. / get a lift – a) offer sb. / be offered a ride in a car or other vehicle. Can you give me a lift to the station?

b) (of a person's spirits) become / make more cheerful, contented. The big increase in her salary gave her a tremendous lift.

2. (US = elevator) box-like apparatus in a building for taking people up or down to another floor: take the lift to the tenth floor.

lift-man n – one who operates a lift.

10. **tidy** adj – arranged neatly and in order; having the habit of placing and keeping everything in its right place: a tidy room / desk; a tidy boy; tidy habits.

tidy v – (up) make tidy. I must tidy myself. You'd better tidy up (the room) before the guests arrive.

tidily adv

tidiness n

Synonyms: *tidy, neat, trim, spick-and-span* adj.

Neat suggests cleanliness, simplicity and a certain orderliness or precision which sometimes becomes the chief implication of the word.

Tidy implies habitual neatness.

Trim adds the implication of smartness, often of smugness or compactness.

Spick-and-span stresses the brightness and freshness of that which is new (or made to look like new).

E.g. We liked his tidy habits. He always kept his room tidy.

Neat work; a neat worker; a neat desk; a neat dress.

A trim ship / cabin; a trim little garden.

Her mother keeps her spick-and-span every moment of the day. The kitchen was spick-and-span.

Antonyms: *untidy, disorderly, confused, messy.*

11. strike v – 1. hit; give a blow or blows to; aim a blow at. He struck me on the chin. He struck the table with a heavy blow. He struck his knee with his hand / struck his hand on his knee. He seized the stick and struck at me. The ship struck a rock. The tree was struck by lightning.

2. (cause to) sound: strike a chord on the piano. This clock strikes the hours.

3. (for, against) of workers etc.; stop working for an employer; strike for higher pay / against bad working conditions.

4. impress; have an effect upon the mind. How does the idea / suggestion strike you? The plan strikes me as ridiculous.

strike n – act of striking: the numerous strikes in the coalmines; strike of bus-drivers.

be / go on strike; be / come / go out on strike – be engaged in, start a strike

a general strike n

strike-breaker n

striker n – worker who strikes

striking adj – 1. attracting attention; arousing great interest.

2. that strikes: a striking clock.

strikingly adv – in a striking manner: a strikingly beautiful woman.

Synonyms: *to strike, to hit, to beat.*

To strike – the general term for delivering one or several single blows. More literary or poetic than the other terms. Used in more educated speech.

To hit – usually to deal a single, strong blow, definitely directed. *To hit* is often interchangeable with *to strike*; if, however, the idea of impact is implied, *to hit* is to be preferred.

To beat – to strike repeatedly, to give repeated blows. Also used figuratively.

E.g. Why did you strike (hit) him in the face? She hit (struck) him on the nose. He hit (struck) his head against the door. Some parents beat their children when they are not good. His heart is still beating.

Phrases:

strike a match; strike a blow

hit the target; hit the nail on the head; a hit – big success

beat sb. black and blue; beat a record; beat a carpet; beat one's breast; beat the drum

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Consult a dictionary and practise the pronunciation of the following words:

universe, idealistic, queer, knotted, primeval, unfathomed, oyster, hotch-potch, squeamish, chivalry, to twiddle, thorn tree, frieze skirt, battered, peacock, tam-o'-shanter, forehead, catechism, casement, fowl, mare, oblique, shepherd.

II. Explain the polysemy of the words and phrases in italics and then translate them.

A. 1. My remark *made* him blush. 2. It was John's upbringing that *made* him a coward. 3. The statue *is made* of bronze. 4. The bronze bas-reliefs at the foot of the Nelson Column *are made* from captured French guns. 5. Irish stew *is made* from meat, onions and potatoes. 6. What is the box *made* of? 7. I'm sure she'll *make* an excellent teacher. 8. We'll have to *make* him take the medicine. 9. What *makes* you think he knows the truth? – Everything. His look. The way he talked at dinner. 10. The dean *made* a speech at the meeting. 11. The students *made* a drawing of the model who posed for them. 12. She *makes* all her own clothes. Recently she *made* herself a pretty hat. 13. During the trip on the Daugava he *made* many sketches and drawings.

B. 1. During the flood the river overflowed its *banks*. 2. The boy sat on the *bank* fishing in the pond. 3. We went boating on the Daugava River and admired the beauty of its *banks*. 4. He opened an account in the *bank*. 5. The left *bank* of the river was covered with a thick forest.

C. 1. The *way* we took lay through the forest. 2. I can show you the *way* to the nearest village. 3. It's a long *way* from here. 4. Let me show you the right *way* of doing it. 5. This *way*, please. 6. They *made their way* through the silent streets of the sleeping city. 7. The guide *led the way* through the forest till we reached a narrow path. 8. Let's discuss it *on the way* home. 9. The children *lost their way* in the forest. 10. *By the way*, what was it she told you? 11. They couldn't even talk in private: there was always someone *in the way*. 12. What was it that stood *in the way* of her happiness? 13. *Get out of my way!* 14. I shall *get her out of the way* for ten minutes so that you can have an opportunity to settle the matter. 15. The music was unusual but quite beautiful *in its own way*. 16. She likes *to have her own way* in everything. 17. That seems to me a very good *way out*.

D. 1. I *crossed* the road and came to the beach. 2. He used always to sit in a peculiar attitude with his arms *crossed* on his *crossed* legs, looking slantingly, through his glasses. 3. The moment we begin to read, we at once *cross* the writer's interests with our own. 4. No one likes to be *crossed*. 5. The bridge *crosses* the river. 6. Evidently your letter *crossed* mine. 7. He plans to *cross* the mountains on foot. 8. I've broken the window. Do you think Dad'll be *cross*? 9. It never *crossed* my mind that Pete might be jealous. 10. She made the sign of the *cross*. 11. This dog is a *cross* between a sheepdog and a boxer. 12. I was *cross* with her for losing her gloves. 13. He *crosses* me in everything. 14. We had a rough *crossing* from Dover to Ostend.

E. 1. At the party she *wore* her wedding dress and he said she looked like a lily-of-the-valley. 2. You should always *wear* blue: it matches your eyes. 3. I have *worn* my shoes into holes. 4. The carpet was *worn* by the many feet that had trodden on it. 5. The waves have *worn* the stone. 6. She *wears* her hair short. 7. This

cloth *wears* badly. 8. I don't know what *to wear*. 9. This coat doesn't look too bad considering how much *wear* it's had. 10. Every spring new beach *wear* comes into the shops. 11. Continued use is gradually *wearing* the stone steps *away*. 12. *Wearing* the preoccupied look of a man with a lot on his mind, he sipped from a glass of milk and frowned thoughtfully.

F. 1. He promised to come out of *pity* for the girl. 2. I'd like to have this book. It's a *pity* it costs so much. 3. It seems a *pity* to waste my time on that boy. He does not want to study. 4. What a *pity* you didn't see the play! 5. He always thought that it was a great *pity* that his friend could not finish the book about his childhood. 6. He felt *pity* for the small girl but couldn't help her.

G. 1. The opening ceremony of the Olympic Games was a memorable *occasion*. 2. Mother was saving several bottles of wine for some special *occasion*. 3. On one *occasion* I made the mistake of confiding in her and I regret it now. 4. There was a moment's silence, then mother, *rising to the occasion*, said: "Please, come in, Pete." 5. The family met on two *occasions*: Christmas and mother's birthday. 6. This is not the *occasion* to remind her of this. 7. This was the *occasion* for another dispute. 8. He did what the *occasion* demanded. 9. The young composer was asked to compose the music for the *occasion*. 10. There will be *occasional* rains next week. 11. When she is not busy she pays us an *occasional* visit.

H. 1. The new house has one *advantage* over the old: it is larger. 2. The new method of teaching vocabulary has many *advantages*. 3. If you buy a car now it will be to your *advantage*. 4. Whatever he does he turns everything to his own *advantage*. 5. It's not fair that you took *advantage* of her mistake. 6. The young man took *advantage* of her good nature. 7. The young woman showed to *advantage* on that occasion. 8. He has an *advantage* over other students, he is well-read. 9. The *advantages* of good education are great. 10. He has the *advantage* of being young. 11. He took *advantage* of an opportunity to speak to the girl. 12. The uniform set off his figure to *advantage*. 13. There was no doubt that in some fashion Clark had a moral *advantage* over him.

I. 1. The fog *lifted* gradually. 2. The box is too heavy for me to *lift*. 3. He *lifted* his hand to give the signal. 4. I'll give you a *lift* to the station. 5. The news gave us a great *lift*. 6. The man is a *lift* attendant. 7. The sick man was *lifted* on to the bed. 8. She *lifted* the child to look at the lion. 9. She *lifted* the baby from its cot. 10. The beetroot crop has been *lifted*. 11. He never *lifts* a finger to help me.

J. 1. Is your room *tidy*? 2. We liked his *tidy* habits. 3. The letter was written in his nice, *tidy* handwriting. 4. Could you *tidy* your books away? 5. He has the *tidiest* office you ever saw. 6. She put her things *tidily* in the closet. 7. The garden looked much better when he had *tidied* it up. 8. She was constantly running around *tidying* up after the boys.

K. 1. He was afraid *to strike*. 2. The man *struck* at him with an open hand. 3. She *had struck* the foot against a stone and it hurt her. 4. He *struck* upon a happy thought. 5. The boy *struck* the nail with a hammer. 6. It's dark here, *strike* a match. 7. The clock *struck* twelve times. 8. The tree was *struck* by lightning. 9. The workers went on *strike*. 10. The woman was *struck* dumb with horror. 11. I was *struck* with her wonderful voice. 12. The man was *struck* with paralysis. 13. It suddenly *struck* me that the idea was brilliant. 14. I was *struck* by her patience.

III. Give your own sentences or situations with the following word combinations and translate the combinations into Latvian. Is it always possible to give a word for word translation?

1. a) to make money; to make one's name; to make one's living; to make one's blood boil; to make one's hair stand on end; to make a good teacher; to make some / no difference; to make an excuse; to make faces at; to make fun of; to make friends; to make head or tail of; to make a good job of; to make a mess; to make a point of; to make room for; to make one's way.

b) to do sb. a service; to do sb. credit; to do sb. justice; to do one's duty; to do science; to do one's hair; to do one's best; to do sb. favour; to do good / harm.

2. the left bank of the river; a house on the river bank; to have money in the bank; a bank-bill; a bank-book; a bank draft; bank holiday; bank-note; blood bank; to bank one's salary.

3. to pave the way for; to lose one's way; to go out of one's way to do sth.; to lead the way; to make one's way in life; out of the way; by the way; on one's way; to do sth. in one's own way; to have one's own way; to go one's own way.

4. to make one's cross; to bear one's cross; to take up one's cross; to cut on the cross; a cross between a horse and an ass; to cross a person's path; to cross one's mind; to cross out; to cross off; to cross sb's palm with silver; to cross swords with sb.; to keep one's fingers crossed; to cross oneself; a crossed line; to be cross with the child; cross winds.

5. to look worse for wear; constant wear; hard wear; underwear; footwear; ladies' / men's wear; to wear spectacles; to wear a beard; to wear a troubled look; to wear away; to wear down.

6. to be filled with pity; to feel pity; to have / take pity on sb.; for pity's sake; out of pity; what a pity.

7. on this occasion; to take this occasion to say sth.; occasional visits; occasional rains.

8. advantages of good education; to have an advantage over; to give sb. an advantage over; to take advantage of sb.; to take advantage of sth.; to advantage.

9. to lift a box; to lift one's spirits; to lift up one's eyes; not lift a finger; to lift potatoes; to give sb. / get a lift; to take the lift to the tenth floor.

10. a tidy room; tidy habits; to tidy oneself; to tidy up the room.

11. to strike sth. with sth.; the clock strikes; the idea struck me; to be / go on strike; strike-breaker; a striking film.

IV. Paraphrase the italicized words and phrases by using suitable active vocabulary.

1. to make

1. Cloth is *produced* of cotton, wool and silk. 2. In this book you can find out how *to construct* a bookcase. 3. The company is well-known for producing high quality toys. 4. Do you know how *to prepare* this sauce? 5. He will *be* a good teacher. 6. His jokes

always *cause* me to laugh. 7. Let's give a house a new coat of paint *to have* it more attractive. 8. He *earns* a lot of money. 9. I can't *force* my daughter to wear this uniform. 10. Including wine, the bill *came to* Ls 25,-. 11. I can't *understand* your friend. 12. They *went to the gate* as soon as the lights in the house went down. 13. The two *reconciled* only after a lapse of ten years. 14. He *invented* a dozen excuses for being absent from the lecture. 15. When are you going to *settle* that dispute.

2. way

1. They knew they had gone the wrong *direction* when they looked at the map. 2. I just love *how* she laughs! 3. He did it in a very nice *manner*. 4. There is more than one *method* to build a house. 5. What's the best *method* to remove wine stains? 6. The road was blocked, so we came back a different *route*. 7. I don't recognize this part of town – I think we've come the wrong *direction*. 8. Will you come with me? I don't know *how to get* there. 9. Which *direction* is it to the church? 10. If you ask my brother he'll tell you *how to get* to the zoo. 11. Can you tell me *how to get* to the railway station?

3. to wear

1. I don't know what *to put on*. 2. This stuff will *last* long. 3. He *has* a beard and a moustache. 4. I saw her at the party yesterday, and she *had* a new dress *on*.

4. pity

1. She was full of *sympathy* for the little boy who had lived with his stepmother. 2. They don't want our *compassion*, they need our help. 3. The horses were in a *poor* condition, thin and covered with sores. 4. She missed the concert because her bus was late. – What a *shame!* 5. It seems a *shame* to waste all that food. 6. It's *unfortunate* that you have to travel so far to work.

5. occasion

1. The opening ceremony of the 1992 Olympiad was a memorable *event*. 2. *Once* I saw this man play the guitar and he did it very well. 3. We've met *twice*. 4. This is not the *time* to tell her about it. 5. This is not *the reason* to get offended. 6. He wrote a poem for the *event*.

6. to strike

1. They knew the killer would probably *attack* again but could not say when. 2. The police *attacked* at dawn and caught the thieves while they were still asleep. 3. She was on the point of *hitting* the child again when her husband stopped her. 4. He *hit* him in the stomach. 5. A snowball *hit* him on the back of the head. 6. That she was able to deceive *surprised* me *greatly*. 7. He saw her sitting there alone and it suddenly *occurred to* him that she might like some company. 8. Has it ever *occurred to* you, Pete, that you could lose everything? 9. The boy raised his hand *to hit* back.

V. Paraphrase the following sentences. Pay attention to the combinations with the verb *make*.

1. Tears blurred her eyes and she couldn't make out her brother's scrawl. 2. Seeing their master coming from behind the school building the youngsters made off as fast as they could. 3. Will you make up a prescription for me? 4. She's all made up. I prefer natural beauty. 5. I must have my brown suit made over. 6. Let's make away with that beastly money. 7. The public makes much of this new star. 8. I don't believe you. The story is all made up. 9. Make sure there is a train tomorrow. 10. As it was still early we made for the station on foot. 11. Let's make up our quarrel and be friends again. 12. Have you made up your mind about going abroad? 13. Is it still possible to make up for the time lost? 14. Will you make up fire in the drawing-room? 15. He can make up stories like a professional writer. 16. Don't try to make up to this girl. It's all in vain. She's in love with your elder brother. 17. We must make out this document by tomorrow.

VI. Insert the appropriate particle.

1. Suddenly a cat walked in front of us, and the dog made ... it. 2. How much does Jim make ... his job? 3. That boy over there is making eyes ... me. 4. That nasty boy has been making faces ... me in the street again! 5. Make yourself completely ... home. 6. After the concert the crowd made ... the nearest door. 7. When the thieves saw the big dog making ... them, they ran away. 8. Did you make a bid ... the painting? Yes, but somebody else offered more. 9. Can you make room ... another guest at the dinner table?

10. Mother can make a wonderful meal ... bits of food left over from the day before. 11. Are these shoes made ... leather? 12. You'll never make a musician ... that boy. 13. Never make fun ... a child. 14. The house was made stone in the last century. 15. Wait a minute while I make ... my face. 16. The coat and trousers make ... a suit. 17. My grandmother used to make ... her own medicine. 18. Has Jim made it Mary yet?

VII. Choose the right word: *make, do.*

1. When Dickens learnt shorthand he began to ... some reporting in the House of Commons for the newspapers. 2. Will you ... me a favour and take this telegram to the telegraph office? 3. Thank you ever so much for asking me. I'll ... every effort to come. 4. This medicine won't ... you any harm. It's good for headache. 5. The flag was ... of different pieces of cloth. 6. The accident did not ... much damage to the car. 7. Yesterday we had to ... a very difficult translation. 8. Little Dorrit ... some sewing outside the prison. 9. Everybody ... fun of this man. 10. The young scientist ... a brilliant speech at the conference. 11. King Lear's sister ... him a good service. 12. Every morning my mother ... the beds in our flat. 13. Mr. Smith has just returned from his trip. His holiday has ... him a lot of good. 14. Ann is an excellent student, she ... hardly any mistakes. 15. That has nothing to ... with me. 16. This is all I have, will it ...? 17. This factory ... agricultural machines. 18. Would you please ... the stove while I ... cleaning? 19. You ... everything you can to ... me angry. 20. The traffic was so heavy that we only ... twenty miles an hour.

VIII. Answer the following questions.

a) 1. When do you do your homework? 2. How do we make a fire? 3. Did you make many mistakes in your last test? 4. Did you make spelling or grammar mistakes? 5. Do you do the housework or does your mother do it? 6. Can you make friends easily? 7. What harm may a storm do to the crop? 8. Do you make up with your friends after a quarrel? 9. What must you do first when you make tea? 10. Do you keep all the promises you make? 11. Do these exercises help you to make progress in your English? 12. What must you do if you want a thing well done?

b) 1. What are books made of? 2. What is paper made of? 3. What is bread made from? 4. What are pencils made of? 5. What can be made out of glass? 6. What can be made out of wood? 7. What can be made out of silver? 8. How much does four plus five make? 9. Do we make dishes out of wood? 10. How much does twice six make? 11. Can we make bread without flour? 12. Do we make butter out of milk? 13. Can we make soup without water? 14. What is wine made from? 15. What is flour made from?

IX. Here are some don'ts and do's. Compose 10 of your own don'ts and do's.

a) 1. Don't make this mistake again. 2. Don't go to bed till you have done all your homework. 3. Don't make a fuss over nothing. 4. Don't make mountains out of mole-hills. 5. Don't do sums for your brother. 6. Don't do anything till I come back.

b) 1. Always do your best. 2. Do as you like. 3. Do your work first and then play. 4. Do your exercises carefully.

X. The following sentences are not true to fact. Correct them.

1. Tables are made of glass. 2. It is easy to make a house. 3. Animals make nests. 4. Twice six makes ten. 5. The rain does not make the flowers grow. 6. The story was so funny that it made me cry. 7. If you want a thing well done ask someone to do it. 8. Smoking will do you no harm. 9. The caterpillars did the harvest a lot of good. 10. It will do you much good if you go to bed late every night. 11. Butter is made from flour.

XI. Answer the following questions using *to make* in your answers.

1. What does the baker do? 2. What does the dressmaker do? 3. What does the tailor do? 4. What does the shoemaker do? 5. What does the builder do? 6. What does the farmer do?

XII. Translate into English.

1. Kad Kitija atvēra durvis, viņa ieraudzīja brāli, kurš sēdēja pie galda un taisīja lidmodeli. 2. Saka, ka viņai jau ir labi panākumi darbā. 3. Skat, šis sols darināts no koka. 4. Mazuļi cēla mājiņas no smiltīm. 5. Viņam bija kaut kas jādara, lai neaizmigtu. 6. Vēlreiz

izlasījis savu sacerējumu, viņš izdarīja dažus labojumus. 7. Tagad viņai vajadzēja saklāt gultas un aiziet uz veikalu. 8. Izdarīt to nebija grūti, grūtāk bija izlemt, ko darīt pēc tam. 9. Viņa izskatījās ļoti jauka savā gaiši zilajā kleitiņā, kas bija pašūta no vienkārša kokvilnas auduma. 10. Jūsu augstsirdība dara jums godu. 11. Es tūdaļ uzklāšu gultu, un jūs varēsiet atpūsties. 12. Te ir tortes recepte, kuru var izcept bez miltiem. 13. No kā jūs cepāt šos cepumus? Tie ir ļoti gardi. 14. Šis vīns izgatavots no īpašas vīnogu šķirnes. 15. Viss tas ir nieki. Nevajag no mušas izpūst ziloni. 16. Tiklīdz tu paveiksi savu darbu, piezvani. 17. Vai no rītiem jūs vingrojat? 18. Šo darbu jāpabeidz (jāpadara) šodien, lai ko tas arī nemaksātu. 19. Neatliec uz rītu to, ko vari padarīt šodien. 20. Jānim nebija ne santīma. Vajadzēja iztikt bez pusdienām.

XIII. Fill in the appropriate synonyms:

a) shore, bank, beach

1. We undressed on the ... and went for a swim. 2. After the great rains, the river overflowed its ... 3. The ... was so crowded we could hardly find a place for our deckchair. 4. I walked along the silent ..., meditating. 5. The ... of the river were lined with on-lookers. 6. Weeping willow grew on the ... 7. The ship drew up on the ... 8. They stepped on ... for the first time in many months. 9. It's amazing what can be found on the ... at the end of the season. 10. We must build up the ... of the river to prevent flooding. 11. The ... of the lake were distant now. 12. We sailed to distant ... 13. ... combers sometimes make valuable finds. 14. Oil is ruining Britain's ... 15. Some water birds nest on river ... 16. Canvas wind-breakers are sometimes used on the ...

b) road, path, way

1. Then he went along the ... through the wood until he came to the ... where all the traces were lost. 2. Will you show me the ... to Yarmouth? he asked. – I walked a little ... down the ... and showed him the ... 3. James picked his ... among the heaps of gravel – the drive was being laid – till he came opposite the porch. 4. Mrs. Bramwell led the ..., followed by her fine guests and her husband, into supper.

c) to wear, to dress, to put on

1. Come on, Nancy, ... your best dress! 2. When Henry Higgins came to Ascot he was ... in tweeds. 3. Mary always ... blue. I suppose she knows she looks nice in it. 4. I think you must ... your new evening dress tonight. 5. Look, the boy is trembling with cold. Tell him to ... properly. 6. It's popular with young men now to ... beards and long hair. 7. The man we met was ... a cotton shirt and trousers. 8. It was pleasant to see her ... in a national costume. 9. Why don't you ... a hat? The sun is very strong. 10. When spring comes she always ... a flower in the button-hole of her costume. 11. "What are you going to ... at our fancy-dress party?" – "I think, I'll ... like a cosmonaut." 12. They asked me how he was ... but I could not recollect what he was ... that day. 13. Why aren't you ... your rubber boots? The country road is very muddy. 14. Please help me to ... the children. 15. The mother ... the child and told him to wait for her in the yard. 16. She is so beautiful and she ... well. 17. Don't ... your overcoat, it's very warm outside. 18. "Is she always ... in white" – "Yes, she enjoys ... white." 19. He was still ... when I came in. 20. She doesn't ... glasses on the stage.

d) chance, opportunity, occasion

1. She was afraid she would not get a ... to spend a single penny of it herself. 2. It wasn't a formal ... There was a court case, to come yet, which would be properly conducted. 3. Though he did not expect Christine until the morning, there was just the ... that she might already have arrived. 4. It was as though she still had something to say to me, and could not decide upon the words, yet waited there for me to give her ... 5. What is more formal than a family dinner? An official ... of uncomfortable people, who meet very seldom, making conversation. 6. It was as if they were only just in time for a train, they hadn't a ... of saying good-bye. 7. Her method of attack was so downright and sudden that there was seldom ... to escape. 8. He was a temperate man who touched alcohol only rarely, but this ... demanded to be marked in the true family tradition.

e) to strike, to hit, to beat

1. Don't you dare ... me! 2. He ... his head against the table as he fell. 3. ... a drum gives one great satisfaction. 4. Wife, dramatically:

"You coward! You ... me! I shall go back to mother!" 5. Doesn't his behaviour ... you as strange? 6. ... up the eggs with a whisk, it's better than a fork for the purpose. 7. The British housewife traditionally ... her husband with a rolling-pin, not a carpet-... when he comes home drunk. 8. I ... the target with my first shot. 9. That song was a big ... in the 60's. 10. Who will ... the first blow? 11. The conductor ... time with his baton. 12. Yes, that ... the nail right in the head. That's what we'll do. 13. It's dark in here; let's ... a match. 14. My father was badly ... in the financial crash. 15. ... the gong to bring them in for dinner. 16. The Hollywood star had a ... personality. 17. The rain was ... against the window. 18. He ... the ball with all his might. 19. On the ... of midnight Cinderella had to return.

XIV. Answer the questions.

1. What properties do you think will make you a good teacher? 2. What makes you study English? 3. What situations make your blood boil? 4. Do horror films make your hair stand on end? 5. Why do women like to make up their face? 6. Do you yourself do your hair? 7. How do you intend to make your way in life? 8. What is the best way to study foreign languages? 9. Is it always good to take one's own way? 10. Under what conditions would you say: "Your work is still a long way off perfection"? 11. What could you do out of pity? 12. In what situations would you like somebody take pity on you? 13. On what occasions do women wear evening dresses? 14. Do you think university education will give you an advantage? Why? 15. How long does it take you to dress? 16. What do you put on when you go on a hike? 17. Who wears a uniform? 18. Much depends not only on what we wear, but on how we wear clothes, doesn't it? Prove it. 19. Who sometimes wears clothes of protective colouring? When do they wear them? 20. When do you wear galoshes (a woollen dress, a sports suit, an apron, pyjamas)? 21. When do you tidy your room up? 22. What are the things that strike you in our life (in students life)? 23. Which bank of the Daugava is the city of Daugavpils situated on? 24. Do you have money in the bank? 25. When do British people have bank-holidays? 26. What happens if a person goes bankrupt? 27. When do we say "Cross your t's and dot your i's"? 28. In what situation would you

say "Keep your fingers crossed"? 29. What do you do when your plans are crossed? 30. Why do you think shop-lifting occurs quite often in this city? 31. If you are offered a lift on your way home, would you accept it?

XV. In what circumstances would you say:

1. I'll make tea for all of us. 2. I'd like to make myself useful. 3. He'll make an excellent husband. 4. One must always do one's duty. 5. It does you credit. 6. His father paved the way for his success. 7. Things are in a bad way. 8. For pity's sake, try to stop the girl! 9. You were given a chance but you didn't take it. 10. This is not the occasion to laugh at him. 11. You should lay out your money to the best advantage. 12. My dress looks bad for wear. 13. Look, she is wearing a wedding ring on her finger. 14. The boy has very tidy habits. 15. Your kitchen is spick-and-span! 16. Her appearance is striking. 17. What do you bank with? 18. This political party is bankrupt in ideas. 19. I hope I'll never cross your path again. 20. I've never heard a cross word from his lips. 21. Good luck will lift your spirits.

XVI. Translate into English.

1. Mēs nolēmām nosvinēt šo notikumu un aiziet visi uz koncertu. 2. Viņš nogaidīja izdevīgu brīdi un piegāja pie jaunās, skaistās meitenes. 3. Laiku pa laikam viņam uznāk sāpju lēkmes. 4. Manam brālim ir daudz nejaušu paziņu. 5. Televīzijas laika ziņās teica, ka tuvākajās dienās laiks būs nepastāvīgs un pa laikam līs. 6. Situācija ļoti sarežģījusies, un viņiem būs grūti atrast kādu izeju no tās. 7. Pa ceļam uz Cēsīm mēs iegriezāmies E. Dārziņa muzejā. 8. Ceļš bija gluds un plats, un mēs varējām braukt ātri. 9. Smagais fiziskais darbs bija padarījis viņas rokas raupjas. 10. Jūra bija vētraina, un kuģim bija bīstami atstāt ostu. 11. Viņš bija pie samaņas līdz pēdējam brīdim. 12. Skolēni apzinājās nepieciešamību izmācīties visas stundas, taču tas nebija viegli. 13. Visā pasaulē cilvēki jūt lielu līdzcietību pret bēgļiem, kam sava valsts jāatstāj bada un vajāšanas dēļ. 14. Istaba, kurā viņa strādāja, bija vienmēr kārtīga, un tajā bija patīkami uzturēties. 15. Dzīvoklis bija tādā nekārtībā, ka to nekavējoties vajadzēja uzpost. 16. Skolotāju pārsteidza ziņa, ka viens no viņas skolēniem bija arestēts par zādzībām veikalā.

17. Strādnieki uzsāka streiku par labākiem dzīves apstākļiem. 18. Pulkstenis tikko nosita astonei. 19. Vīrietis uzbruka meitenei un iesita tai ar dūri pa galvu. 20. Šīs divas meitenes ir pārsteidzoši līdzīgas. Vai viņas nav dvīņu māšas? 21. Daudzās valstīs precēti cilvēki valkā laulību gredzenus. 22. Kurpju zoles izvalkājušās gluži plānas. Jānes pie kurpnieka salabot. 23. Šie zābaki ir no īstas ādas un ļoti labi. Tie valkāties gadiem ilgi. 24. Svešajā pilsētā mums bija grūti atrast bērnu preču veikalu, un mēs pajautājām ceļu kādai vecākai dāmai, kura to laipni mums arī parādīja. 25. Viņu attiecībās bija ieviesušās nelielas nesaskaņas un tikai vēstule no Anglijas nolika visas lietas savā vietā. 26. Direktors beidzot parakstīja šo svarīgo dokumentu. 27. Jauno mākslinieci ļoti sāpināja neobjektīvā kritika vienā no mākslas žurnāliem. 28. Nekas jau liels nenotiks, ja atliksi ceļojumu uz Parīzi uz vēlāku laiku. Gan jau viss nokārtosies. 29. Zēns savainoja kāju, krizdams no koka. 30. Nesot kādu smagumu, man sāp roka.

TEXT EXERCISES

I. Answer the following questions.

1. Where did Frank Ashurst and Robert Garton intend to travel to?
2. Why were they sitting on the bank beside the road?
3. What did they look like?
4. What were they talking about?
5. What was Garton's opinion of human emotion?
6. What did Ashurst think of it?
7. Whom did they see coming down from the common just above them?
8. What did the girl look like?
9. What did the friends want her to do?
10. How did the girl speak to them.
11. Where did she live?
12. What did she tell the friends about her origin and her relatives?
13. What did they see when they came on the farm suddenly?

II. Pick out from the text words and phrases bearing on:

- 1) men's appearance;
- 2) women's appearance;
- 3) parts of the body;
- 4) articles of clothing.

Use them in your own descriptions of your friends, relatives etc.

III. Find Latvian for:

a football knee; self-consciousness; hotch-potch; thorn tree; peacock; tam-o-shanter; catechism; stone-built house; casement windows; Scottish firs; round-the-corner; unfathomed.

Find sentences with these words in the text and explain them.

IV. What nouns can you add to the following adjectives?

thin, pale, queer, curly, smooth, wavy, modern, battered, broad, lame, soft, crisp, oblique.

V. Find English equivalents in the text for the following Latvian words and word combinations:

pagūt nokļūt, vadoties pēc kartes, līdzās ceļam, cieši blakus mežam, sarunāties par visumu, garāki nekā sešas pēdas, sava veida, pēdējo piecu tūkstošu gadu slimība, sašaurināt līdz, atgriezties pie, nejauši (negaidīti) sastapt(-ies) ar, baidīties, turpināt (iet uz priekšu), runāt bez kautrēšanās, iejaukties (runā), tuvoties (uznākt, parādīties), stiepties (sniegties) lejup līdz.

Pay attention to the prepositions these word combinations are used with and give your own examples with them.

VI. Change each sentence so that it has an opposite meaning by substituting antonyms or antonymous phrases for the underlined words.

1. They were sitting on the bank away from the road. 2. They had covered 7 miles. 3. Ashurst's hair was curly and dark. 4. They often faced regular misfortunes. 5. We cannot stay at this farm. 6. He was unconscious of having done wrong. 7. It is a disadvantage to be small when you are standing in a crowd to look at a football game. 8. The sea is smooth today.

VII. Learn the phrases listed right after the text and interpret their meaning in the sentences from the text.

VIII. Look through the text and then discuss the following:

1. What did Garton mean by using the words "our modern unhappiness"? What could we call "our modern unhappiness" nowadays? 2. What do you think of Garton's words: "Let's get back

to feeling for nobody, and have a better time"? Was he right? Why do you think he said that? 3. Do you agree that "to starve oneself emotionally is a mistake"? Why? 4. Describe Robert and Ashurst. 5. What do you know about Red Indians?

IX. Make up dialogues discussing the following situations:

1. You want to put up at some place for a night.
2. You are in the country and see a wonderful scenery.
3. You see a very charming woman (a handsome man).

X. Retell the text and then give its summary.

DISCUSSION EXERCISES

I. Read texts A, B, C.

A. TO CROSS THE RUBICON

To cross the Rubicon means to take a final, irrevocable step which may have dangerous consequences. It arises from the phrase said to have been used by Julius Caesar, a famous Roman general, statesman and writer of the 1st century B.C.

The Rubicon was a small stream in northern Italy which separated Cisalpine Gaul, the province of which Caesar was the governor, from Italy proper. His political rivals at Rome had passed a law ordering him to disband his army. Caesar marched to the river and stood at the bank undecided whether to cross it and thereby precipitate civil war. Then, drawing his sword and exclaiming, "The die is cast" he dashed across the river and was followed by his whole army. Since then the expression has become a proverb. When anyone has actually begun a hazardous enterprise from which he cannot draw back, they say, "He has crossed the Rubicon."

Having crossed the Rubicon, Caesar started the civil war against the Roman Senate; six months later he made himself master of the whole of Italy.

B. CROSS YOUR FINGERS

The cross is an ancient symbol in many cultures and religions. It is closely linked, of course, with the Christian church. Scandinavians also used crosses to mark the edges of their territory. And the cross was a sacred symbol to the Egyptians and to the Aztecs in Mexico. Today, the word cross is used in many expressions that seem to have little direct connection to religious beliefs.

For example, one way of wishing good luck to someone is to tell him that you will “keep your fingers crossed” for him.

Sometimes you may even cross two of your fingers when you wish him luck. But, more often, just saying the expression is believed to be enough to help bring success.

Crossing the fingers when making a wish may be a tradition many hundreds of years old. But most experts think the expression is an American one that began about ninety years ago. It probably has its roots in the ancient Christian belief that making the sign of the cross would keep away evil spirits and bad luck.

Children often cross their fingers when they tell a small lie. It is an old belief that lies will not be punished if told while the fingers are crossed. Many children have unhappily discovered that crossing their fingers offers no such protection.

Children often use another expression, “cross my heart”, when they say they are telling the truth. A child usually will make an X over his heart with his finger while saying it.

Language expert Charles Earle Funk says “cross my heart,” and crossing the heart with the finger, probably come from the Roman Catholic Church tradition of making the sign of the cross. Mr. Funk also says that earlier in this century, children in the United States often expanded the simple saying. They said, “Cross my heart and hope to die, And hope the cat will spit in your eye.”

Cross is used in many other ways. If you deceive someone or confuse them you are “crossing them up.”

And you might become “cross as two sticks” at someone. This old expression means you are very angry. What do two sticks have to do with the situation? If you put one stick across the middle of the other stick, you have a cross. And the word cross is another

way to say angry. So if you are as cross as two sticks, you are very angry.

Another expression, “to cross swords,” sounds like something from the past. It recalls the period when knights in armor seemed to spend most of their time fighting. You can imagine two angry knights whose swords cross during a battle. But the expression no longer means a noisy fight with swords. It describes a less violent fight with words instead of swords. You “cross swords” with someone when you argue or debate an issue with him.

From “Words and their stories”, VOA Special English

C.

It is probable that when men first painted their faces, many thousands of years ago, it was for the purpose of frightening their enemies in war. But there are records of women in Egypt using cosmetics more than four thousand years ago. These women not only painted their eyebrows, they also added a thick dark line under each eye, and had different kinds of paint for different seasons of the year.

Women in ancient Rome used cosmetics. They used Egyptian kohl for darkening the eyelids, powdered chalk for whitening the skin, and a red colouring matter for the cheeks. A rich Roman lady spent many hours over her toilet, helped by a crowd of young slaves of many nationalities. The Roman poet Ovid wrote a book on cosmetics, and gives a recipe for what we now call a face-pack, made from flour, eggs and other materials. The use of this he says, will make the face smoother and brighter than a mirror.

In England it was the custom, during the seventeenth and eighteenth century, for all ladies of fashion to paint their faces and to blacken their eyebrows. In the nineteenth century there was a change of taste, however, and until about the end of the century, ladies who used make-up were not accepted in high society. Girls were advised, just before entering the ball-room, to bite and lick their lips and slap their cheeks hard, and so bring some colour to the face.

Today the use of cosmetics is accepted everywhere, and it is common to see women and girls making up in public. The cosmetics

industry is one of the largest in the country, and large sums of money go to the owners of beauty salons.

II. Make up your own situations or short stories using the phrase “to cross the Rubicon”.

III. Interpret and translate into Latvian the phrases discussed in text B.

IV. Discuss the problems in text C.

V. Interpret the proverbs, give their Latvian equivalents and then make up situations with them.

1. As neat as a new pin.
2. By doing nothing we learn to do ill.
3. Dot your I's and cross your t's.
4. Empty vessels make the greatest sound.
5. Faint heart never won fair lady.
6. Many words hurt more than swords.
7. Strike while the iron is hot.
8. To beat about the bush.
9. To make both ends meet.
10. To put a spoke into somebody's wheel.
11. To wear one's heart upon one's sleeve.
12. Where there's a will, there's a way.

VI. Read the following funny story. Ask questions about the parts of the sentences which have the words *to dress, to put on, to wear*. Make your friends answer them.

There was a fire in the middle of the night at a country house where there were a number of guests. They all ran outside very quickly – they did not even wait to put on their clothes. Dressed in blankets and overcoats they were standing watching the flames when another guest joined them. “Why did you people get so excited?” he asked. “Now look at me. When I heard the alarm, I got out of bed, lit a cigarette and quietly dressed myself. In fact I was putting on my tie when I thought it was not the best tie to wear with the shirt I had on. So I took it off and put on another tie. So I

didn't lose my head at all. I never get excited in a difficult or dangerous situation."

"That's good," said one of his friends, "but why didn't you put on your trousers?"

VII. Read and discuss the following puns:

1. One day a painter, looking out of the window, saw an old countryman going by and thought the man would make a good subject for a picture. So he sent out his servant to tell the old man that his master would like to paint him. The old man hesitated and asked what the painter would pay him. The painter said he would give him a pound. The man still hesitated. "Come on," said the painter, "it's an easy way to earn a pound." "Oh, I know that," he answered. "I was only wondering how I should get the paint off afterwards."

to paint: 1) krāsot, 2) gleznot.

2. Mamma: Where have you been, Johnny?

Johnny: Playing ball.

Mamma (severely): But I told you to beat the rug, didn't I?

Johnny: No ma'am. You told me to hang the rug on the line and beat it.

1) *to beat the rug* – izdauzīt paklāju

2) *to beat it* – aizbēgt, aizskriet (ņemt kājas pār pleciem).

3. If your wife wants to learn to drive, don't stand in her way.

to be (stand) in one's way: 1) traucēt, stāvēt ceļā, 2) stāvēt uz ceļa.

4. – What's the matter with your finger?

– I hit the wrong nail.

nail: 1) nags, 2) nagla.

5. Haberdasher: These shirts wear like iron. They just laugh at the laundry.

Customer: Yes, I know. I have some just like these. They come back with their sides split.

to wear like iron – ilgi valkāt, būt ļoti izturīgam

to split one's sides with laughter – plīst aiz smiekliem

6. "Your hat is becoming ..."
"Oh, thank you."
"... becoming a little worn out."
7. Whiskers versus razor.
With whiskers thick upon my face
I went my fair to see;
She told me she could never love
A bear-faced chap like me.

I shaved then clean, and called again,
and thought my troubles over;
She laughed outright, and said I was
More bare-faced than before.
8. "I can't tell you how long I have laboured on this manuscript,"
the aspiring writer told the producer, "polishing a scene here,
adding a line there, eliminating scenes, and adding new
characters."
"What a pity," said the producer, handing it back to him. "All
work and no play."

VIII. Read the jokes and then tell them to your groupmates.

1. "I hear your son is getting on?"
"Rather! Two years ago he wore my old suits. Now I wear his."
2. "Are you Donald Vance?" he asked the young man beside the
cloak-room.
"No," said the young man in surprise.
"Well, I am," was the reply, "and that is my overcoat you are
putting on."
3. "Why are you wearing my new raincoat?" Bill Thompson, a
student, asked his room-mate.
"I thought you'd want me to wear it," said the other, "to protect
your new suit."
4. A lawyer, when driving along a narrow lane, had difficulty in
avoiding running over an old woman who was picking up some
beets which had fallen from a passing cart.
"Women and donkeys are always in the way," he said.

“Sure, sir,” was the old lady’s reply. “I’m glad you have the manners to put yourself last.”

5. Teacher: If your brother has five apples and you take two from him. What will be the result?
Johnny: He will beat me.
6. Teacher: Could you forgive a boy who had struck you?
Pupil: I think I could if he was bigger than me.
7. “Why did you strike this dentist?”
“Because he got on my nerves.”
8. At a party a lady approached a general.
“What do you think of the latest developments in the war, general?” she asked, “Where is the Army going to strike next?”
“Madam,” replied the general, “If I didn’t know I would be happy to tell you.”

IX. Read the poem and discuss the ideas in it. Learn it by heart.

SHE WALKS IN BEAUTY

By G.G. Byron

I

She walks in beauty, like the night
Of cloudless climes and starry skies:
And all that’s best of dark and bright
Meet in her aspect and her eyes:
Thus mellowed to that tender light
Which heaven to gaudy day denies.

II

One shade the more, one ray the less,
Had half impaired the nameless grace,
Which waves in every raven tress,
Or softly lightens o’er her face;
Where thoughts serenely sweet express
How pure, how dear their dwelling-place.

III

And on that cheek, and o'er that brow,
So soft, so calm, yet eloquent,
The smiles that win, the tints that glow,
But tell of days in goodness spent.
A mind at peace with all below,
A heart whose love is innocent!

UNIT 2

AGATHA CHRISTIE (1891–1976)

Agatha Christie known throughout the world as the Queen of Crime was born at Torquay, Devonshire. She was educated at home and took singing lessons in Paris. At the end of World War I she began writing. Her first novel, the Mysterious Affair at Styles, appeared in 1920. Here she created Hercule Poirot, the little Belgian detective with the egg-shaped head and the passion for order – the most popular sleuth in fiction, since Sherlock Holmes. General recognition came with the publication of “The Murder of Roger Ackroyd” (1926). With “Murder at the Vicarage” (1930) Agatha Christie began a series of novels featuring Miss Marple, this time a lady detective who soon won a universal appeal for her wise but unimposing methods of unravelling a crime.

Beginning with 1952 A. Christie enjoyed another run of success with theatre adaptations of her fiction and plays (“The Mousetrap” is still staged). Many of her stories have been filmed including The Secret Adversary, The Murder of Roger Ackroyd (cinema title “Alibi”), Ten Little Niggers, Murder on the Orient Express etc.

Agatha Christie also wrote six romantic novels under the pen-name Mary Westmacott.

She is the author of seventy-seven detective novels and books of stories that have been translated into every major language.

Agatha Christie’s success with millions of readers cannot be accounted for by the mere fact that her simple prose provided good entertainment; the explanation lies in her ability to combine clever plots with excellent character drawing, and a keen sense of humour with great power of observation that result in social scenery of a wide range. Besides, her books seem to proclaim that justice will prevail and evil will be conquered even by one man’s effort; they defend rationality and never go beyond those aspects of human nature that are our common stock.

Answer the following questions:

1. Find Torquay, Devonshire, on the map. What can you tell about this place? 2. Where was Agatha Christie educated? 3. Who are the main detectives in her works? What can you tell about them? 4. Which of her works have you read? Do you like them? Why? 5. Why are her works so popular and well-read? 6. Which other English detective-story writers do you know?

THE CASE OF THE RICH WOMAN

(an extract)

The name of Mrs. Abner Rymer was brought to Mr. Parker Pyne. He knew the name and he raised his eyebrows.

Presently his client was shown into the room.

Mrs. Rymer was a tall woman, big-boned. Her figure was ungainly and the velvet dress and the heavy fur coat she wore did not disguise the fact. The knuckles of her large hands were pronounced. Her face was big and broad and highly coloured. Her black hair was fashionably dressed; and there were many tips of curled ostrich in her hat.

She plumped herself down on a chair with a nod. "Good morning," she said. Her voice had a rough accent. "If you're any good at all you'll tell me how to spend my money!"

"Most original," murmured Mr. Parker Pyne. "Few ask that in these days. So you really find it difficult, Mrs. Rymer?"

"Yes, I do," said the lady bluntly. "I've got three fur coats, a lot of Paris dresses and such like. I've got a car and a house in Park Lane. I've had a yacht, but I don't like the sea. I've got a lot of those high-class servants that look down their nose at you. I've travelled a bit and seen foreign parts. And I'm blessed if I can think of anything more to buy or do." She looked hopefully at Mr. Pyne.

"There are hospitals," he said.

"What? Give it away, you mean? No, I won't do! That money was worked for, let me tell you, worked for hard. If you think I'm going to hand it out like so much dirt – well, you're mistaken. I want to spend it; spend it and get some good out of it. Now, if you've got

any ideas that are worth while in that line, you can depend on a good fee."

"Your proposition interests me," said Mr. Pyne. "You do not mention a country house."

"I forgot it, but I've got one. Bore me to death."

"You must tell me more about yourself. Your problem is not easy to solve."

"I'll tell you and willing. I'm not ashamed of what I've come from. Worked in a farmhouse, I did, when I was a girl. Hard work it was too. Then I took up with Abner – he was a workman in the mills near by. He courted me for eight years, and then we got married."

"And you were happy?" asked Mr. Pyne.

"I was. He was a good man to me, Abner. We had a hard struggle of it, though; he was out of job twice, and children coming along. Four we had, three boys and a girl. And none of them lived to grow up. I dare say it would have been different if they had." Her face softened; looked suddenly younger.

"His chest was weak – Abner's was. They wouldn't take him for the war. He did well at home. He was made foreman. He was a clever fellow, Abner. He worked out a process. They treated him fair, I will say; gave him a good sum for it. He used that money for another idea of his. That brought in money hand over fist. He was a master now, employing his own workmen. He bought two concerns that were bankrupt and made them pay. The rest was easy. Money came in hand over fist. It's still coming in.

Mind you, it was rare fun at first. Having a house and a tip-top bathroom and servants of one's own. No more cooking and scrubbing and washing to do. Just sit back on your silk cushions in the drawing-room and ring the bell for tea – like a countess might! Grand fun it was, and we enjoyed it. And then we came up to London. I went to swell dressmakers for my clothes. We went to Paris and the Riviera. Rare fun it was."

"And then?" said Mr. Parker Pyne.

"We got used to it, I suppose," said Mrs. Rymer. "After a bit it didn't seem so much fun. Why, there were days when we didn't even fancy our meals properly – us, with any dish we fancied to choose from! As for baths – well, in the end, one bath a day's

enough for anyone. And Abner's health began to worry him. Paid good money to doctors, we did, but they couldn't do anything. They tried this and they tried that. But it was no use. He died." She paused. "He was a young man, only forty-three."

Mr. Pyne nodded sympathetically.

"That was five years ago. Money's still rolling in. It seems wasteful not to be able to do anything with it. But as I tell you, I can't think of anything else to buy that I haven't got already."

"In other words," said Mr. Pyne, "your life is dull. You are not enjoying it."

"I'm sick of it," said Rymer gloomily. "I've no friends. The new lot only want subscriptions, and they laugh at me behind my back. The old lot won't have anything to do with me. My rolling up in a car makes them shy. Can you do anything, or suggest anything?"

"It is possible that I can," said Mr. Pyne slowly. "It will be difficult, but I believe there is a chance of success. I think it's possible I can give you back what you have lost – your interest in life."

"How?" demanded Mrs. Rymer curtly.

"That," said Mr. Parker Pyne, "is my professional secret. I never disclose my methods beforehand. The question is, will you take a chance? I do not guarantee success, but I do think there is a reasonable possibility of it."

"And how much will it cost?"

"I shall have to adopt unusual methods, and therefore it will be expensive. My charges will be one thousand pounds, payable in advance."

"You can open your mouth all right, can't you?" said Mrs. Rymer appreciatively. "Well, I'll risk it. I'm used to paying top price. Only when I pay for a thing, I take good care that I get it."

"You shall get it," said Mr. Parker Pyne. "Never fear."

PHRASES

1. to raise one's eyebrows
2. to show sb. in / into
3. to look down one's nose at sb.
4. to bore one to death
5. to be ashamed of

6. to take up with sb.
7. to be out of a job
8. to bring in money
9. hand over fist
10. to be sick of sth.
11. to laugh at sb. behind one's back
12. to take a chance
13. to be good / bad at sth.
14. to hand sth. out
15. to be fun
16. to get used to sth. / doing sth.

VOCABULARY ITEMS

1. **proposal** n – 1. proposing.
 2. sth. proposed; plan or scheme: a proposal for peace; proposals for increasing trade between two countries.
 3. offer (esp. of marriage): a girl who had five proposals in one week.
propose v – 1. offer or put forward for consideration, as a suggestion, plan or purpose. I propose starting early. We propose leaving at noon.

Phrase:

to propose toast / sb's health – ask persons to drink sb's health or happiness.

2. propose marriage (to sb.), offer marriage.
3. sb. (for sth.), put forward (sb's name) for an office / for membership of a club, etc. I propose Mr. Smith for chairman. Will you please propose me for your club?

proposer n

- proposition** n – 1. statement; assertion: a proposition so clear that it needs no explanation.
 2. question or problem (with or without the answer or solution).
 Tunnelling under the English Channel is a big proposition.
 3. proposal; suggestion.

Synonyms: *propose, suggest, offer.*

Offer means to hold out or present for acceptance or refusal.

We offer some objects or assistance. He offered me some cake.
He offered to help me with a difficult problem.

Suggest may mean “to bring to the mind the idea of, to show in an indirect way, to hint, to imply”. Her face suggested bad health.

Propose may mean the same as *suggest* and is used in the same types of construction. However, *propose* is less widely used, being confined mainly to formal style (in the context of meetings, debates, elections etc.).

Grammatical constructions:

The object after *suggest* and *propose* may be expressed by:

1. a noun: I suggested a walk in the wood. I propose an early start.
2. a gerund: I suggest going there at once. I propose starting early.
3. an object clause with the verb in the subjunctive mood: Mary suggested that he should come at 6. (he come at 6). I propose that we should start early.

Bear in mind that *suggest* is never followed by an infinitive. If the person to whom the suggestion is made is mentioned the preposition “to” is always used before it. *Propose* can be followed by the infinitive in the meaning “to intend, have as one’s aim”: He suggested to the librarian that the books should be arranged differently on the shelves. He proposed to sell the house and go abroad.

- 2. solve** v – 1. find the answer to (a problem etc.): solve a crossword puzzle / an equation
2. find a way out of a difficulty. Help me to solve my financial trouble.

solvable adj – that can be solved or explained.

solution n – 1. (to, for, of) answer (to a question etc.); way of dealing with a difficulty. Might economy be the solution to / for / of your financial troubles.

2. process of finding an answer or explanation: problems that defy solution – cannot be solved.

- 3. shame** n – 1. distressed feeling, loss of self-respect, caused by wrong, dishonourable or foolish behaviour, failure, etc.: feel shame at having told a lie / at failing in an examination; hang one's head in / for shame. To my shame I must confess that ...
 2. capacity of experiencing shame. He has no shame (is quite without shame) is lost to shame.
 3. dishonour: bring shame on sb. / oneself – dishonour sb. / oneself. Shame on you! – You should be ashamed of you.
 4. a shame – sth. unworthy; sth. that causes shame. What a shame to deceive a girl! It's a shame to take the money for doing such easy work. He is a shame to his family.
shame v – cause shame to; cause sb. to feel shame; bring disgrace on: to shame one's family.
shameful adj – causing or bringing shame.
shamefully adv
shameless adj – without shame; immodest.
shamelessly adv
- 4. enjoy** v – 1. get pleasure from; take delight in: enjoy one's dinner. I've enjoyed talking to you about old times.
 2. have as an advantage or benefit: enjoy good health / a good income.
 3. (oneself) experience pleasure; be happy.
enjoyment n – 1. pleasure, joy, satisfaction: to think only of / live for enjoyment.
 2. something that gives joy and pleasure.
- 5. choose** v – 1. from / out of / between / pick out from a greater number; show what or which one wants by taking. She took a long time to choose her new hat.
 2. decide; be pleased or determined. I do not choose to be a candidate. He chose to stay where he was.
- Synonyms:** *to choose, to select, to elect, to pick.*
Choose is the general term of this group. It may be used in all the cases where choice is meant, and is applied to people, things, words, places, action, etc.
 Which apple may I take? – Choose which you like. She took a

long time to choose a present for her mother. He was clever enough to choose another theme for their discussion.

Select means “to choose sth. or sb. carefully, as best or more suitable, out of a great number.” It implies “a wide range of choice” as to select people (places, words, species, specimens etc.)

On Sunday we were selecting the best athletes for the coming contest. The aunt took him to the larder, selected a big apple and gave it to him. To select a candidate for a post. I select books I want.

Elect generally means to choose a person for an office by vote, by mutual agreement, as, to elect a candidate (a deputy, a representative).

To elect a chairman. To elect member to Parliament. To elect a person to be president.

Pick (sometimes pick out, up) like *select*, implies careful choice.

This word is more colloquial than the other members of the synonymic group. It may be applied to people, things, words.

To pick what you like. To pick the best. To pick a winner. To pick books from the library.

Phrases:

to pick one's way (steps) – to walk carefully choosing the places where to step.

to pick and choose – to choose with too much care.

choice n – 1. act of choosing: make a careful choice; be careful in your choice.

2. right or possibility of choosing. I have no choice in the matter.

3. variety from which to choose. This shop has a large choice of clothes.

4. person or thing chosen. This is my choice.

6. try v – 1. make an attempt. I don't think I can do it, but I'll try.

2. try for sth. – make an attempt to get or win (esp. a position): try for a scholarship / a position in a Civil Service.

3. use sth., do sth. as an experiment or test, to see whether it is satisfactory. Have you tried sleeping on your back as a cure for snoring?

Phrases:

try sth. on – put on (a garment, show etc.) to see whether it fits, looks well etc. I want to try the shoes on before I buy them.

try one's hand at sth. – see whether you have the skill needed. Why don't you try your hand at editing the staff magazine?

4. inquire into a case in a court of law. He was tried and found guilty. He will be tried for murder. Which judge will try the case?

5. put a strain on. Small print tries the eyes. Don't try his patience too much.

tried adj – that has been tested; reliable: a tried friend / remedy

trying adj – distressing; putting a strain on: a trying person to deal with; have a trying day.

try n – attempt. Let me have a try at it. He had three tries and failed each time.

trial n – 1. testing, trying, proving: give a new worker a trial – give him a chance to show his skill. We shall put the machine to further trial.

2. examination in a law court before a judge. The judge conducted four trials in one day. The trial lasted a week.

Phrases:

be / go on trial (for sth.) – be tried in a court of law (for an offence).

bring sb. to trial; bring sb. up for trial; put sb. on trial – cause him to be tried in a court of law.

stand one's trial – be tried.

3. sth. or sb. troublesome or annoying. That child is a trial to his parents. Life is full of little trials.

Note:

In colloquial style, "try + inf." is often replaced by "try and + inf.", esp. in the imperative, and "don't try and didn't try" are often replaced by "don't try and" and "didn't try and": Try and behave better. Don't try and swim across the river.

Synonyms: *try, attempt, endeavour.*

Try, attempt, endeavour mean "to make an effort to do sth."

Try is the general term and may be used in place of any other member of the synonymic group. It occurs both in everyday speech and in literary language.

Attempt is to set about a thing with a view to effecting it and it is preferably used as a literary word.

Try is to set about a thing with a view to seeing the result. We attempt by trying but we may try without attempting. We always act when we attempt, we use senses and the understanding when we try. However, since *try* and *attempt* are close to each other they may be applied indiscriminately.

Endeavour implies intensity of an effort made to achieve sth., to try hard, to do one's best.

To attempt / try / to solve a problem. I shall attempt to prove my point of view. You are at liberty to try once more. I endeavour to do my duty. I'll endeavour to help you.

- 7. lose** v – 1. no longer have: to lose one's money; to lose a leg / in a road accident. He lost two sons in the war. You are losing your hair (= getting bald). She has lost her good looks (= is no longer good looking).

Phrases:

lose one's ground – retreat; fail to keep one's position or advantage.

lose one's head – become confused or overexcited.

lose heart – be discouraged.

lose one's heart to sb. – become very fond of; fall in love with.

lose interest (in sth. / sb.) – cease to be interested in, attracted by.

lose one's reason / senses – become insane or wildly excited.

lose one's temper – become angry.

- 2.** (passive) be lost, disappeared; die; be dead. The ship and all its crew were lost.

be lost in sth. – be deeply occupied or filled with, e.g. thought, wonder, admiration etc.

- 3.** be unable to find. I've lost the keys of my car. The books seem to be lost.

Phrases:

lose one's way / oneself – get lost, be unable to find the right way.

The children lost their way in the forest. We lost our way in the dark.

lose sight of sth. – a) overlook; fail to take account of. We mustn't lose sight of the fact that ...

b) no longer be able to see. The early navigators disliked losing sight of land. We lost sight of him in the crowd.

lose one's tongue – be too shy to speak.

lose track of sth. – lose touch with; fail to follow the course or development of.

4. fail to win, be defeated: to lose a game / a match / a battle / a war / a lawsuit / a prize.

lose by / in / on sth. – be or become worse. You will lose nothing by waiting. The story does not lose in the telling (= is not made less interesting).

5. (of a watch or clock) go too slowly. Does your watch gain or lose? My watch loses two minutes a day.

6. spend time, opportunity, efforts to no purpose; waste. There's not a moment to lose.

loser n – person who loses or is defeated. He is a good / bad loser.

loss n – 1. act or fact of losing: loss of blood; loss of prestige. Loss of health is more serious than loss of money.

2. failure to keep, maintain or use: a heavy loss; loss of opportunities; without (any) loss of time.

3. failure to win or obtain. The loss of contract.

4. that which is lost: sell sth. at a loss; suffer heavy losses in war.

5. (be) at a loss for sth. / to do sth., be perplexed, uncertain. He was at a loss for words.

8. cost v – 1. be obtainable at the price of; require the payment of. The house cost him 15000 pounds! Compiling a dictionary costs much time and patience.

2. result in the loss of. Careless driving may cost you your life.

3. bring (injury or disadvantage). The boy's bad behaviour cost his mother many sleepless nights.

cost n – 1. price (to be) paid for the thing: the cost of living. He built his house without regard to cost.

living costs – the general level of prices.

2. that which is used, needed or given to obtain with. The battle was won at (a) great cost in human lives.

Phrases:

at all costs – whatever the cost may be.

at the cost of – at the loss or expense of. He saved his son from drowning, but only at the cost of his own life.

count the cost – consider the risks, possible losses etc. before doing sth.

to one's cost – to one's loss or disadvantage. Wasps' stings are serious, as I know to my cost.

Synonyms: *price, cost, value, worth.*

Price means “the amount of money for which something is offered, sold or bought.”

E.g. What is the price of this dress? The price of petrol has gone up.

Cost as a verb and occasionally the noun *cost* express the same idea as the noun *price*.

E.g. How much does this dress cost (= What is the price of this dress?) If you buy more than 10 books we will reduce the cost of each book by 10%.

However, more often *cost* has a different meaning, namely the amount of money needed to produce something or carry out some process, or provide some service.

E.g. 10,- Ls will hardly cover the cost of materials.

Value means “the amount of money for which sth. could be sold, although it is not for sale at the moment of speaking.”

E.g. The value of pictures by the impressionists increased dramatically after the First World War.

Value also has uses not connected with money. It means “the usefulness of sth.”, especially in comparison with other things.

E.g. His advice was of great value to me.

Worth is used mainly as a predicative adjective with the verb “to be”, meaning “to have a certain value.”

E.g. He offered me the tape-recorder for 25,- Ls but I don't think it's worth it.

9. top n (usu. the top of) – 1. highest part of point: at the top of the hill; at the top of the page.

Phrases:

on top – above. The green book is at the bottom of the pile and the red one is on top.

on (the) top of – over, resting on. Put the book on (the) top of the others.

from top to bottom – completely.

from top to toe – from head to foot.

2. upper surface. Polish the top of a table.

3. highest rank, foremost (or most important) place. He came out at the top of the list.

Phrase:

come to the top – win fame, success.

4. utmost height or degree.

Phrase:

to shout at the top of one's voice.

5. (attrib. and in compounds) highest in position or degree: on the top shelf; at top speed; charge top prices.

top-hat n – tall silk hat.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Consult a dictionary and practise the pronunciation of the following words:

client, ungainly, to disguise, knuckles, ostrich, to murmur, yacht, to court, to soften, bankrupt, cushions, countess, to pause, sympathetically, wasteful, subscriptions, curtly, to guarantee, payable, appreciatively.

II. Explain the polysemy of the words and phrases in italics and then translate the sentences into Latvian.

A. 1. It was clever of you to *propose* that they should take the responsibility for what had happened. 2. I *propose* we *put off* the meeting till tomorrow. 3. What do you *propose* to do? 4. His colleagues *proposed* him for the job. 5. I would like to *propose* Mr. Parker for the position of the manager. 6. Our *proposal* will be considered next time. 7. The *proposal* to close the school was defeated. 8. The *proposition* should be considered very carefully. 9. The *proposition* was put before the Parliament. 10. Don't you think it's time you *proposed* to that girl? You've been going out together for 2 years. 11. I hope, Tom will make you an official *proposal* soon.

B. 1. It was not difficult to *solve* this problem. 2. The mystery of the missing book was never *solved*. 3. I had to go and meet these people. No other *solution* seemed possible. 4. It took the police several years to *solve* the crime. 5. The question is *solvable*.

C. 1. He remembered his words with a deep sense of *shame*. 2. The boy blushed with *shame*. 3. I'm *ashamed* to admit that I did not help my mother. 4. Everyone was shocked by his *shameless* behaviour. 5. Her appearance put me to *shame*. 6. What a *shame* to cheat a small child! 7. He seems to have lost all sense of *shame*. 8. What a *shame* that your husband can't be with you. 9. I'm *shamefully* ignorant about that.

D. 1. We *enjoyed* listening to his music. 2. How did you *enjoy* your holiday? 3. The elderly women *enjoyed* seeing who came in and out. 4. We all *enjoyed* the film immensely. 5. The trip was wonderful. We *enjoyed* every minute of it. 6. The park was full of people, *enjoying* themselves in the sunshine. 7. The parents found the party pretty boring but the children seemed *to be enjoying* themselves. 8. You seem to *enjoy* a good income. 9. I *enjoy* my children's confidence.

E. 1. They *chose* my brother as their leader. 2. You may say what you *choose*, but I shall never go back on my word. 3. We left our hotels when we pleased and we walked through the streets whenever we *chose* to do so. 4. Why did you *choose* this colour? 5. You can *choose* whether to be paid by cheque or in cash. 6. I can't decide which of these hats to buy, help me to *choose*! 7. Don't you think the producer may be criticized for *choosing* this play? 8. Why did you *choose* Helen as your secretary? She is useless. 9. The shop had a very wide *choice* of cheeses on display.

F. 1. If you can't do it the first time, *try* again. 2. I don't think I can do it but I'll *try*. 3. I'll *try* for this job. 4. It seems easy until you *try* it. 5. You had better *try* the brakes before you start. 6. I can't find it, I'll *try* the other drawer. 7. I'll *try* the door to see whether it's locked. 8. I want to *try* my luck. 9. Who is going to *try* your case? 10. Don't you want to *try* your hand at knitting? 11. Don't *try* your tricks on me. 12. *Try* knocking at the back door.

G. 1. A few days ago I *lost* my bag. 2. We mustn't *lose* a moment. We have very little time. 3. He *lost* his parents many years ago. 4. The poor man had *lost* a leg in a battle. 5. The girl was gazing at the picture, *lost* in admiration. 6. My hints were *lost* upon my friend, he failed to notice them. 7. The soldier died from *loss* of blood. 8. *Loss* of health is worse than *loss* of wealth. 9. The student was at a *loss* for a word. 10. Does your watch gain or *lose*? 11. Their army *lost* heavily. 12. There is not a moment to *loose*. 13. He stood *lost* in wonder.

H. 1. How much does it *cost* you to keep a car? 2. The *cost* of electricity has risen in the last six months. 3. The *cost* of living in this country is high. 4. How could you afford it? It must have *cost* a fortune! 5. His fame has been achieved only at a *cost* to his family and his health. 6. The shop is closed on Saturday, as I have just found out to my *cost*. 7. Another mistake like that could *cost* you your job. 8. She saved her family at the *cost* of her own life. 9. She wanted her child back as soon as possible, whatever the *cost*.

I. 1. He is one of the world's *top* footballers. 2. There is a wonderful view from the *top* of the hill. 3. The *tops* of the trees swayed in the wind. 4. She wore a hat with a blue pom-pom on *top*. 5. Write your name at the *top* of the page. 6. My books are on *top* shelf. 7. Our football team are on the *top* form now. 8. I can't discuss it with you at the moment. It's *top* secret.

III. Give your own sentences or situations with the following word combinations and translate the combinations into Latvian. Is it always possible to give a word for word translation?

1. a proposal for peace; to propose toast; to propose sb's health; to propose to sb.; to propose sb. for chairman; a clear proposition.

2. to solve a crossword puzzle; to solve an equation; to solve financial trouble; the best solution; problems that defy solution.

3. to hang one's head in / for shame; to my shame ...; to have no shame; shame on you!; to be lost to shame; to bring shame on sb.; to be ashamed of; what a shame ...; to shame one's family; to feel shame.

4. to enjoy a performance; to enjoy one's dinner; to enjoy good health; to enjoy a good income; to enjoy oneself.

5. nothing to choose between; do just as you choose; to make a careful choice; to have no choice; a large choice of wines.

6. to try for sth.; to try one's hardest; to try to do sth.; to try sb. for a job; to try sth. on; to try one's hand at; to be tried for a murder; to try sb's patience; to try one's courage; a trying day; a tried remedy; to put a machine to a trial; to give sb. a new trial; to conduct several trials in one day; to be on trial for sth.; to bring sb. to trial; to put sb. on trial; to stand one's trial; to be a trial to one's parents.

7. to lose one's balance; to lose a job; to lose one's hair; to lose one's good looks; to lose one's ground; to lose one's head; to lose heart; to lose one's heart to sb.; to lose interest in; to lose one's reason; to lose one's temper; to be lost in sth.; to lose one's way; to lose sight of sth.; to lose one's tongue; to lose track of sth.; to lose a game; my watch loses; to lose opportunity.

8. to cost much time and money; to cost one's life; living cost; the cost price of an article; without regard to cost; at all costs; at the cost of; count the cost; to one's cost.

9. the top of the page; from top to bottom; on top; from top to toe; the top of the table; the top of the list; to come to the top; to shout at the top of one's voice; at top speed; to charge top prices; top-hat.

IV. Paraphrase the italicized words and phrases by using suitable active vocabulary.

1. What do you *suggest*? I *suggest* a short rest before we continue our work. 2. He *offered* to drink to the health of the Queen. 3. *It's a pity* you can't come to the party. 4. What *a pity* you have to leave so early. 5. He has *an advantage* of having good health. 6. I've really *got pleasure* from talking to you. 7. You think only of *pleasure*. 8. The teacher *selected* the cleverest child as the leader of the class. 9. Come and help me *select* a good place for our camp. 10. Will Jim *attempt* to win the first prize? 11. I always *fail to win* at cards, with my bad luck. 12. Put your money into our savings plan,

and you can't *suffer a disadvantage* from it. 13. I can always *busy* myself with a good book. 14. The chairman's remarks *were drowned* by the public's shouts of disapproval. 15. The child stood on the sand, *filled* with wonder at her first sight of the sea. 16. He was *no longer able to see* the car he was chasing. 17. I'm sorry, I've *failed to follow* the events. Would you start your story again? 18. The escaping prisoner was able *to disappear* in the crowd.

V. Insert the appropriate particle.

1. He felt no shame ... what he had done. 2. She blushed ... shame when the lie was discovered. 3. His behaviour brought shame ... the whole family. 4. He should be ashamed ... himself. 5. Do you think he'll propose marriage ... you tonight? 6. Shall we propose a toast ... the future of the company? 7. It is difficult to choose one house ... so many nice ones. 8. Jim chose Mary ... his wife. 9. It is difficult to choose ... two such nice books. 10. She was chosen ... the whole class to go on the trip. 11. I'm always willing to try my hand ... learning something new. 12. The prisoner is being tried ... robbery with violence. 13. Never buy shoes without trying them ... first. 14. How much money did you lose ... races? 15. What have you got to lose ... trying? 16. I've lost my ring ... the garden. 17. I can always lose myself ... a good book. 18. The song loses a great deal ... repetition. 19. I didn't hear you, I was lost ... thought. 20. As they grow older, many children lose faith ... their parents. 21. I seem to have lost interest ... my work recently. 22. This teacher has lost control ... the class; he will have to be replaced. 23. Never lose sight ... your main purpose in life. 24. The police soon lose track ... criminals if they don't catch them soon after the crime. 25. Jim's father lost a fortune ... one game of cards. 26. As soon as she saw the house, mother lost her heart ... it.

VI. Fill in the appropriate synonyms:

a) propose, suggest, offer

1. The plan which you ... is very interesting and we shall try it. 2. Who has ... him the job? 3. Mother ... that I took along an umbrella because it looked as if it was going to rain. 4. The host ... that we should sing a song, or play some merry games. 5. No one ... him help. 6. Peter ... that we should go skiing after dinner. 7. The man

nodded to his visitors and ... him a seat. 8. The coach ... that we should rest. 9. They ... him money for the picture but he refused to sell it. 10. My friends ... that we should play a game of tennis. 11. The boy ... the old woman to carry her basket. 12. The school doctor ... that I should see the dentist. 13. Do you know who ... the idea of going to the seaside? 14. The builder ... a new and more effective method of laying bricks. 15. I refuse to take anything he ... me. 16. My friend ... to go to the station to find out when our train would start and ... that I should take care of the things.

b) offer, suggest, suggestion

1. Your ... is very tempting, but I cannot accept it. 2. My friend ... to pay the fare as I had no change. 3. Why doesn't somebody ... that we should all do something to help her? 4. The plan which you ... is very interesting and I am ready to try it. 5. I refuse to take anything he ... me. 6. He ... that the question be discussed at the next meeting. 7. The teacher ... a very good way of memorizing new words. 8. Mr. White was ... the post of director. 9. Mother ... that I should put on the blue dress when I go to the theatre.

VII. Answer the questions using the verbs “suggest” and “offer”.

1. Michael was going your way, didn't he? Why didn't you offer him a lift? 2. When people lose something they often offer a reward to the finder, don't they? Why? 3. If you were offered a free trip abroad where would you go? Why (would you go) to that particular country? 4. I hear you want to buy a car from Mr. Drake. What price did he set on it and how much did you offer him? 5. I take it you agree with what Mr. Brown said. What did he suggest? 6. What do you suggest should be done to make teaching English here more effective?

VIII. Ask questions using the verbs “suggest” and “offer” and have the questions answered.

E.g. T: “Let's cast lots,” said Harris. (Harris said it was necessary to cast lots.)

A: Why did Harris suggest that they should cast lots?

B: He suggested it as he realised that it was the only way to avoid arguing.

1. James said he would do the job. 2. Douglas volunteered to mend the puncture. 3. Donald said that it wouldn't be bad if he went down to Folkstone for the week end. 4. Let John apply to the manager, that's what Helen says. 5. "How about having a set of tennis?" asked Donald. 6. "Shall I buy tickets for you?" asked Michael. 7. "Why call in a radio man? I'll fix the radio set," said John. 8. She wrote she would give a reward to a finder. 9. Mr. Barker told him to consult Dr. Ford. 10. He said that they should appoint Mr. Carter head of the department. 11. Robert said he would make inquiries himself.

IX. Complete the sentences with "offered" or "suggested" as shown in the model.

Model: I ... / going to the cinema. – I suggested going to the cinema.
 / to go and buy tickets. – I offered to go and buy tickets.

1. He ... / we should choose another play to stage.
 / us his assistance.
2. Mike ... / we make a stop and have lunch.
 / us some cake.
3. Mother ... / I should go to bed as I looked pale.
 / me some medicine.
4. The teacher ... / to help me with a difficult problem.
 / that the books should be arranged differently on the shelf.
5. She ... / us a cup of tea.
 / that everyone should be ready by 5 o'clock.
6. My brother ... / a walk in the wood.
 / changing the subject of their conversation.
7. One of us ... / sending for a doctor.
 / to fetch some water.
8. My friend ... / playing an amusing game.
 / to go there instead of me.
9. Do you ... / buying the book?
 / me this book?
10. Did he ... / you his car?
 / our joining them at once?

11. He ... / going to the country for the week-end.
/ to give me a lift in his car.
12. The guide ... / walking along the central street of the capital.
/ picture booklets telling the history of the city.
13. Maria ... / that we should hold the meeting without
delay.
/ to pay the fare as I had no change.
14. The librarian ... / me a lot of interesting books on different
subjects.
/ we should go on an excursion to the History
Museum.

X. Change the gerunds into subordinate clauses as shown in the model.

Model: George suggested our walking back to the railway station.
George suggested that we (should) walk back to the railway station.

1. He suggested our going to the seaside during the summer holiday. 2. The teacher suggested our showing trust in Nick. 3. Helen suggested their ringing George up and asking him to come at once and settle the question. 4. Who suggested their taking a walk in the woods? 5. What do you suggest doing now? 6. Peter suggests our waiting for Nick till 7 o'clock. 7. Our form mistress suggested making a change in our plans. 8. I'd like to suggest our putting these desks in a row. 9. Nina suggested our taking a porter to help us with our luggage.

XI. Make up short dialogues according to the model. Use the words in the columns below.

Model 1. "As it is late, (a); I suggest taking a taxi (b). And what do you suggest?"

"But I suggest walking c); It's a short way from here.

a	b	c
A. is fond of flowers	to buy flowers	to present A. with a book
It's raining	to stay at home	to put on raincoats and go to see V.; she is ill

We have some time to spare	to go for a walk	to read newspapers
K. is very tired	to have a rest	to help K. carry the rucksack
It's very difficult to get tickets for the evening show	to go home and watch TV	to try to get tickets
The exams are coming	to discuss how to prepare for them	to prepare instead of discussing

Model 2. "I see you are very cold, (a). May I offer you a cup of tea?" (b)

"Oh, that's very kind of you. Thanks."

a

to have difficulty in opening the door
to feel uncomfortable there
your suitcase is heavy
your pencil is broken
you cannot solve the problem

b

my help
my seat
my help
my pencil
my assistance

XII. Translate into English.

1. Es ierosinu izlasīt visiem grāmatu vēlreiz un pēc tam to apspriest.
2. "Ko vēl tu ierosini?" – "Es ierosinu aiziet visiem kopā paslēpot."
3. Laipnā saimniece piedāvāja mums labas pusdienas un, kad mēs gājām projām, viņa piedāvāja lietussargu, jo ārā lija.
4. Es piedāvājos aiziet pēc ārsta, bet man paskaidroja, ka pēc ārsta jau aizgājis Pēteris.
5. Kas gan varētu piedāvāt braukt ar laivu vētras laikā?
6. Viņai piedāvāja grūtu, bet interesantu darbu.
7. Kad vīrietis ieraudzīja, ka sievietei grūti pāriet ielu, viņš nekavējoties piedāvāja savu palīdzību.
8. Mums piedāvāja biļetes uz teātra izrādi, bet mēs atteicāmies, jo tovakar bijām aizņemti.
9. Tēvs ieteica nosūtīt telegrammu nekavējoties, citādi meiteni neviens stacijā nesatiks.
10. Gids piedāvāja tūristiem savus pakalpojumus.
11. Viņš piedāvāja draugam kopā pavadīt brīvdienas viņa vecāku mājās.
12. Sjūzena piedāvāja Irēnai kopā izbraukt ārpus pilsētas.

XIII. It is interesting to know that

... it was the English scientist Rutherford who in 1921 suggested giving the name "neutron" to the neutral particle of the atomic nucleus. "Neutron" was coined from the Latin word "neutron", which means "neither this nor that", because it had neither a positive charge nor a negative.

... that Vasili Bazhenov, a great Russian architect, after passing brilliantly the public examination at the Paris Academy (where he had been sent to perfect his skill), was offered a position in Paris as a court architect, but he refused, wishing to return to his homeland.

XIV. Account for the difference in the shades of meaning of the synonyms. Translate the sentences into Latvian.

1. It was as though someone from outside were directing him how to *choose* his words in order to rob me of any possible excuse. 2. His (Hemingway's) temperament *was selecting* the instances he should narrate, his mind *selecting* the words to employ. 3. They are, he thought, the hardest in the world; the hardest, the cruelest ... Or is it that they *pick* men they can handle? 4. If you will *select* a spot where the unit confronting your troops has had losses, the combination of loudspeaker and leaflet ought to work. 5. He *had picked* from a drawer a little tarnished cylinder ... 6. Mrs. Bramwell's evening began at nine o'clock, the late hour *being chosen* out of consideration for the medical gentlemen who might be detained at their surgeries. 7. Why can't one *choose* one's death? 8. He was telling her how he had learned to shoe horses and *select* cattle fit for killing. 9. He took out a tin and *selected* a tiny red pellet from it; then gulped it down.

XV. Insert the appropriate synonyms: *to choose, to elect or to select.*

1. I demand nothing. You are free to ... between us two, the one who is most dear to you. 2. Let him do it. He is big enough to ... for himself. 3. Thirty-three plays were ... for presentation at the spring festival. 4. The officer ... a good position for his regiment. 5. Who was ... to play on the school team? 6. Poetry has always ... soldiers

as heroes. 7. Let him ... what kind of dress he likes. 8. For the second season our gardens have been ... as a nesting place by two families of wild duck. 9. It was difficult to ... the best picture but we finally ... the most colourful. 10. Then she sang again, and danced again and had been ... among twenty from the fifty girls. 11. George Washington was ... president of the USA in 1789. 12. Try to ... the most appropriate words when you speak. 13. I wonder whom they will ... as chairman. 14. "Which apple may I take?" – "... which you like." 15. You must do what I tell you. Remember, you've ... me as your captain. 16. The British Peace Committee reported that 60 members had been ... to the congress. 17. The aunt took him to the larder, ... a big apple and gave it to him.

XVI. Replace the italicized parts of the sentences with *to choose*, *to select*, or *to elect* in the proper form.

1. "May I have a piece of cake?" – "Certainly. *Take* anyone you like." 2. All present at the meeting *cast their votes* for Mr. Smith. 3. In order to express your thoughts one must *choose very carefully* the right words. 4. The gardener *was carefully choosing* the best kinds of pears. 5. "Which of the two *to take*?" – "*Take* any you like." 6. The architects spent much time *choosing with care* a place for the monument. 7. Having looked through the catalogue the scientist *carefully chose* the books which he needed for his research work.

XVII. Translate the following word combinations into English. Mind that in some cases more than one synonym is applicable.

ievēlēt konferences delegātus; izvēlēties vārdus; izvēlēties profesiju; izvēlēties paraugus; izvēlēties mēteli; izvēlēties partneri tenisa spēlei; ievēlēt priekšsēdētāju; izvēlēties maršrutu; laipot, lai neie-spertu dubļos.

XVIII. Account for the use of the synonyms in the following sentences.

1. I will not *attempt* to play the part that Paris played on another occasion. 2. All he had *tried* to forget came back, rushed at him, overthrew him. The dull pain and the life slowly dripping out of him. 3. Nature and he *attempted* no other concealment than the ordinary mask men wear. 4. He determined *to try* his hand at negotiation.

5. But, however that may be, I can only ask you, tonight to lend me your attention for a few moments while I *endeavour* to express to you in words what my feelings are on this occasion.

XIX. Fill in the blanks with the necessary form of “try” or “attempt”.

1. She ... to stop him but he was going too fast. 2. Paul ... to ask a question but the others shouted him down. 3. The scientists ... to prove that the disease was caused by radiation but the evidence was inconclusive. 4. In “Oliver Twist” Dickens ... to show the appalling conditions in which many people lived at that time. 5. John ... to grow tomatoes in the garden but the plants hardly produced any fruit. 6. We must ... to find a better method. 7. The Gadfly ... to escape from prison, but failed, as he was ill. 8. Once I ... to swim across a lake but soon gave it up. 9. No matter how hard I ... I couldn't convince him of the truth. 10. Do ... to come. We'll wait for you. 11. The boys ... to climb the mountain, but as they had no special equipment or preliminary training, they soon gave it up.

XX. Read each sentence as it stands and then reword it using “try”, either with the gerund or the infinitive.

Model: A. Cook the mushrooms in butter and see if you like them that way. Try cooking the mushrooms in butter.

B. I did my best to explain it to her but I don't know whether she understood. I tried to explain it to her.

1. Drink your tea with milk. You may prefer it that way. 2. I know you're very busy but do your best to come tomorrow. 3. We did our best to mend the television, but we didn't succeed. 4. We may not be able to help you but we'll do our best. 5. Use this shampoo and tell me what you think of it. 6. I did my best to persuade Susan not to go, but it was useless. 7. Study in the morning. You may find it easier. 8. Make an effort to imitate my pronunciation. 9. Speak French and see if they understand you. 10. You'll never learn to speak French unless you make an attempt to speak it. 11. I'll change doctors and see whether I get better treatment. 12. We must do our best to find a nanny.

XXI. Fill in the blanks with *price, cost, value, worth* and reword the sentences using a verb where this is possible without changing the sense.

1. What is the ... of this suitcase? 2. He bought the table for Ls 2,- but its real ... is much higher. 3. What is the ... of running a car? 4. The ... of coffee rose sharply on the world market. 5. I refuse to pay such a high ... 6. The ... of living continues to rise. 7. These old books have considerable ... 8. The ... of taking electricity to the village was said to be too great. 9. Who will pay the ... of transport? 10. She did not know the ... of the ring, which had been left to her by her mother. 11. Please ask the saleslady what this coat ... 12. Is the suit ... the money you paid for it? 13. This experiment is very important, it's ... sacrificing some sleep for it. 14. This looks like a very expensive dress. It must have ... you a fortune. 15. You sacrificed so much for her, was it ...? – Oh, yes, no matter what it ... me to give her an education, I don't regret it.

XXII. Translate into English.

1. Cik maksā šīs kurpes? 2. Viņam nācās apmaksāt bojāto preču vērtību. 3. Pārtikas preču cenas nepārtraukti kāpj. 4. Viņa samaksāja par kleitu Ls 50,-, taču man šķiet, ka tā nav šīs naudas vērtā. 5. Šī pulksteņa labošana maksās Ls 2,-. 6. Transportēšanas maksa ir Ls 100,-. 7. Tas viņam neko nemaksā. 8. Cenā ietilpst arī aparāta uzstādīšana. 9. Šo filmu ir vērts noskatīties. 10. Šīs mēbeles novērtēja par Ls 500,-. 11. Viņa neuzmanība gandrīz maksāja viņam dzīvību. 12. Tava kleita maksā vairāk nekā tu par to samaksāji. 13. Ziemā āboli dārgāki nekā vasarā.

XXIII. Answer the questions.

1. On what occasions are toasts proposed? 2. When do you feel shame? 3. What behaviour would you call shameful? 4. Is there a large choice of goods in our shops? 5. How do you choose your friends? 6. How often do we elect the Saeima? 7. Do you enjoy going to the theatre, concerts? How often do you do it? 8. Do you enjoy good health? 9. Would you try for a scholarship if you were offered to do it? 10. Why is it necessary to try clothes on before buying them? 11. What would you like to try your hand at? 12. What work can be trying to your eyes? 13. What person would

you call trying to deal with? 14. In what circumstances do you lose your head? 15. What makes you lose your temper? 16. What situations make you be at a loss? 17. What may a careless driving cost you and other people? 18. What is it you would do at all costs? 19. When are top prices charged? 20. What are the problems you'd like to solve?

XXIV. In what circumstances would you say:

1. When do you think he is going to propose to you? 2. I propose your health! 3. Will you please propose me for your club? 4. Who could help me to solve my financial troubles? 5. What a shame to deceive other people! 6. You'll be a shame to your family if you do this! 7. I don't think you'll be so greedy and choose the biggest apple. 8. Do just as you choose. 9. This is your own choice. 10. Oh, he enjoys quite a good income! 11. Try to do your best at the exam. 12. Please try me for this job. 13. I'd like to try my hand at drawing. 14. Oh, she is such a trying person! 15. This machine should be put to trial. 16. No wonder he was put on trial! 17. You seem to have lost interest in theatre. 18. Oh, dear! You are losing your hair! 19. I shall buy the book without regard to cost. 20. It cost me much time and effort. 21. Don't shout at the top of your voice!

XXV. Translate into English.

1. Vairākas valstis iesniedza sadarbības piedāvājumus mūsu valstij. 2. Sapulce izteica vairākus priekšlikumus, un tie tika pieņemti. 3. Es izvirzu Džonu Smitu priekšsēdētāja amatam. 4. Šīs problēmas nav atrisināmas. 5. Viņš nevarēja vairs atrast risinājumu savām naudas problēmām. 6. Sev par kaunu man jāatzīstas, ka jau veselu nedēļu neesmu rakstījis vecākiem. 7. Meitene saprata, ka skolotāja redz viņas melus, un aiz kauna nokāra galvu. 8. Šim cilvēkam nav nemaz kauna. 9. Reizēm ir ļoti grūti izvēlēties, kuru ceļu iet. 10. Šis cilvēks ļoti rūpīgi izvēlas savus draugus. 11. Lūdzu, esi uzmanīgs savā izvēlē. Šoreiz tas ir ļoti svarīgi. 12. Notika pilsētas pašvaldības vēlēšanas, un cilvēki ievēlēja deputātus pilsētas Domē. 13. Vakar es biju draudzenes dzimšanas dienā, un man tur ļoti patika. 14. Man patīk simfoniskās mūzikas koncerti. 15. Mēģini to izdarīt labi. 16. Man šī cepure noteikti jāuzlaiko. 17. Pamēģini, cik ātri tu vari paskriet. 18. Darbs ar mazo zēnu bija liels pārbaudījums viņa

pacietībai. 19. Šodien gan mums bija nogurdinoša diena! 20. Dzīve pilna pārbaudījumiem. 21. Tiesa ilga vairākas dienas. 22. Cik maksā šīs tases? 23. Tava vieglprātība var tev dārgi maksāt. 24. Dzīves dārdzība pieaug. 25. No savas pieredzes zinu, ka komplikācijas pēc šīs slimības var būt ļoti nopietnas. 26. Viņš nesen pazaudējis darbu. 27. Uzzinājis, ka zaudējis derības, viņš zaudēja arī pašsavaldīšanos un izplūda asarās. 28. Meitene ir ļoti skaista, un nav brīnums, ka tik daudzi viņā iemīlas. 29. Viņa cītīgi centās nepazaudēt priekšā braucošo mašīnu no redzesloka, taču tā brauca ar lielāku ātrumu un drīz, strauji attālinādamās, nozuda aiz līkuma. 30. Uzrakstiet lapaspuses augšdaļā datumu. 31. Viņš parasti bija pirmais skolēns klasē. 32. Meistars vēģīgi noskatīja jauno cilvēku no galvas līdz kājām un tad piekrītoši pamāja ar galvu.

TEXT EXERCISES

I. Answer the following questions.

1. Who came to Mr. Parker? 2. What did Mrs. Rymer look like? 3. What was her problem? 4. Why was it so hard for her to spend her money? 5. How did she get her money? 6. What do we learn about her husband Abner? 7. Did they enjoy spending money and being rich? 8. What did Mrs. Rymer complain of? 9. Did Mr. Parker promise to help her? On what conditions?

II. Pick out from the text words and phrases:

1. describing Mrs. Rymer's appearance;
2. describing her dress;
3. describing a luxurious house;
4. which do not correspond to the norms of Standard English in your opinion.

III. Find Latvian for:

a heavy fur coat; a highly coloured face; fashionably dressed hair; tips of curled ostrich; rough accent; country house; to court sb.; to have a weak chest; silk cushions; swell dressmakers; to nod sympathetically; to adopt unusual methods; to pay top price; to work out a process; to want subscriptions.

Find sentences with these combinations in the text and explain their meaning.

IV. What nouns can you add to the following adjectives:

big-boned, coloured, curled, rough, fair, rare, grand, swell, wasteful, professional, reasonable.

V. Find English equivalents for the following Latvian words and word combinations in the text:

ievest istabā, neveikla (lempīga) figūra, tērēt (naudu), risināt problēmu (jautājumu), apprecēties, seja atmaiga, ienest naudu, atlaisties zīda spilvenos, pirmklasīga vannas istaba, vēlēties ēst maltītes, interese par dzīvi.

VI. Change each sentence so that it has an opposite meaning by substituting antonyms and antonymous phrases for the underlined words.

1. He couldn't just sit and watch this *unfair* competition. 2. He is a very *nice* person to deal with. 3. I want *to save* my money. 4. He *got* a very good job. 5. He *hated* swimming in this pond. 6. They have *found* a very interesting book.

VII. Reproduce the parts of the text in which these words and phrases are used. Use these phrases in short stories of your own.

to raise one's eyebrows; to plump oneself down; to have a rough accent; to find sth. difficult; to travel a bit; to hand sth. out; to be mistaken; to come from; to get married; to look younger; to work sth. out; to employ sb.; to be fun; to ring the bell for sth.; to go to sb. for sth.; to fancy sth.; to seem wasteful; to want subscriptions; to give back; to open one's mouth; to risk sth.

VIII. Learn the phrases listed right after the text and interpret their meaning in the sentences from the text.

XIX. Say whether you agree or disagree with these statements. Give your reasoning.

1. It is most original to ask how to spend one's money in these days. 2. It is important to have children in the family. 3. Having a lot

of money is fun only for some time. 4. It seems wasteful not to be able to do anything with money. 5. It is important to have friends. 6. To have interest in life is very essential. 7. If you pay for a thing you should take good care that you get it.

X. Make up your dialogues discussing the following situations:

1. You have a lot of money and you don't know what to do with it.
2. You want to look very smart but you don't have much money to spend on your clothes.
3. You are gradually losing your friends because you have become rich.
4. How large should a family be?

XI. Make up your plan and retell the text.

DISCUSSION EXERCISES

I. Read texts A, B, C.

A. LEG TO STAND ON

Legs are the base of the body. They offer support and balance, as well as a way to move from one place to another. Legs also have provided some colourful expressions used in everyday speech.

One of them is “no leg to stand on”. It means a person has no proof to support his actions or opinions. It was first used about 500 years ago.

The expression is often used in discussions of court trials. One lawyer might say that another lawyer had no leg to stand on, because there was no evidence to prove his case.

“To have a leg up” is a good thing. That expression means you are ahead of someone else in a situation. It is used when someone has a special ‘it’, something that helps to lift him above everyone else. For example, you have “a leg up” on getting a job in a company if your college studies were directly related to the job. You would also have a “leg up” on getting the job if your father owned the company.

An expression heard often in expensive stores is that something costs “an arm and a leg”. When you say that you paid an arm and a leg for a new coat, you are saying that it costs a lot of money.

Another common expression is to “pull someone’s leg”. When you “pull someone’s leg” you play a friendly joke on him. Usually, it is an attempt to make him believe something that is not true. For example, if you bought a cheap coat, then told a friend you paid an arm and a leg for it, you would be “pulling his leg”.

The American writer F. Scott Fitzgerald used the expression in 1925 in his book “The Great Gatsby”. “I suspected he was pulling my leg, but a glance at him made me believe otherwise.”

Some experts say the expression may have come long ago from a group in England called the “trippers-up”. They were criminals who robbed their victims after pulling their legs from under them.

If you find yourself on “your last legs”, you better sit down for awhile and rest. Being “on your last legs,” can mean that you are so tired you cannot continue. After walking around an art museum for several hours, you might tell a friend that you cannot take another step. You say to him, “I am on my last legs”.

The expression also can be used to describe the condition of a business. A company is on its last legs when its financial situation is so bad that it is about to fail.

One final “leg” expression in common use is “shake a leg”. When someone tells you to “shake a leg,” he is asking you to hurry. A father, for example, might tell his son, “Shake a leg. If you don’t hurry, you will be late for school.”

From “Words and Their Stories”. VOA Special English

B. KEEP YOUR SHIRT ON

The shirt has been a common piece of clothing for men and women for a great many centuries. Some of the expressions made from the world are as old, and as common, as the shirt itself.

“Keep your shirt on.” That sounds like good advice for anyone, especially on a cold day. But the expression “keep your shirt on” gives a very different kind of advice.

It means stay calm, do not get excited. Or, it can mean slow down, do not be in such a hurry. The meaning depends on the situation.

Americans began using the expression about one hundred fifty years ago. Back then, men often fought with their fists over a woman, or money owed from playing cards, or almost anything. Before the men would fight, they almost always would remove their shirts. The expression, "keep your shirt on," was advice to stay calm. It was a way of trying to stop the fight.

You may say "keep your shirt on" to someone who is getting angry with you. Or, you may say it to someone who is in a terrible hurry. For example, a wife might tell her husband not to worry, to "keep his shirt on," that they have lots of time to get to the airport.

If you "lose your shirt" you are in big trouble. It means you have lost everything you own, even your shirt. You can "lose your shirt" if you make poor investments. Or if your business suddenly fails. Or if you bet too much money on a losing horse race. "Losing your shirt" is a terrible thing to happen.

If you have lost all your money you may be forced to "roll up your shirtsleeves" and get to work. When you "roll up your shirtsleeves" you are showing that you are ready to work hard, that you are really serious about your work.

Sometimes, "rolling up your shirtsleeves" does not help. In that case, you need a very kind friend, a friend who is willing to give you the "shirt off his back". When someone offers you "the shirt off his back," he is offering whatever help you need. This is the kind of friend to have if you have "lost your shirt".

You do not need a friend who is a "stuffed shirt". A stuffed shirt is a person who takes himself too seriously. He is no fun to be with. All he talks about are his family connections, his money, his important job and the famous people he knows.

So take my advice. "Keep your shirt on" and stay away from "stuffed shirts". If you are unlucky enough to "lose your shirt," "roll up your sleeves" and find a friend who will give you the "shirt off his back."

C. PULL UP YOUR SOCKS

The socks that people wear on their feet are not very exciting. But several interesting English expressions are made from them. One such expression is “Pull up your socks.” It means try to do better. Improve your performance.

Imagine a basketball team near the end of an important game. The players are losing. They are so tired that even their socks look tired. The tops of their socks are falling down over their shoes. The coach calls time out to talk to his team. “Take a deep breath,” he tells them. “Get organized. If you pull up your socks, you can win this game.” He is telling them they can win, if they start playing better.

A newspaper recently reported that a political leader told members of his party they needed to “pull up their socks and get back in the game.”

Another expression is to “sock” some money away. It means to save some money, instead of spending it. A friend might tell you for example that she is “socking” some money away for a holiday trip. Word experts say the expression probably came from people hiding their savings in a sock instead of putting it in a bank.

Another common expression is “to knock your socks off.” The expression is used to describe something that is so great it will excite anyone who hears about it. The listener will become so excited he will jump right out his socks. A salesman, for example, tells a store owner about a new product. “Wait until you try it,” he says, “It will knock your socks off.” A teenager might use the expression to tell a friend about a new rock music album, one that will “knock her socks off.”

Flyers use another sock expression when they talk about an airport closed by fog or other bad weather. They say that the airport is “socked in.”

The expression goes back to the days before pilots had radios and other electronic instruments to help them land. To land safely, they needed to know the direction of the wind, and how fast it was blowing.

In the old days, they got that information from a wind sock. This was a long, tubelike piece of cloth that looked a little like a

sock that a giant might wear. The windsock hung from a pole that stood on top of the highest airport building. When the wind blew through the windsock, the sock turned to show the direction of the wind. And by seeing how far out the sock extended, fliers could get a good idea of wind speed. But they could get this information only if they could see the windsock. When fog hid the sock, they said the landing field was “socked in”. And they landed somewhere else.

II. Make up your own situations with the idioms used in the texts.

III. Which other idioms on articles of clothing do you know. What are their equivalents in Latvian?

IV. Read the jokes and then make up questions on them.

1. A man went into a tailor's shop to buy a suit, and the owner of the shop asked his name, address, date of birth, religion, occupation, politics, school, hobbies and his wife's maiden name.

“But all I want is a suit,” protested the customer. “And I'll pay you cash for it.”

“Sir,” replied the tailor, “I'm no ordinary tailor. I don't just sell you a suit. I sell you a suit that is exactly right for you. I need all this information because I put it all through a computer and get an exact picture of your real self. Then I send to Australia and my representative there chooses sheep that suit your practical personality. The wool from those sheep is exported to America where it is combed and sponged according to a secret formula. Then the wool is sent to Scotland where it is woven in a climate suited to your temperament. Then it is sent to me and I measure you carefully. After I have the suit, there are three more fittings, and then ...”

“Just a minute,” interrupted the customer, “I need this suit tomorrow.”

“Don't worry,” said the tailor. “You'll have it.”

- 2.** John came into the pawnshop. “How much will you give me for this overcoat?”

The shop-keeper looked at it critically. “Four dollars,” he said. “Why,” cried John, “that coat’s worth ten dollars if it’s worth a penny.”

“I couldn’t give you ten dollars for two like that,” answered the shop-keeper. “Four dollars or nothing.”

“Are you sure that’s all it’s worth?” asked John.

“Four dollars,” repeated the shop-keeper.

“Well, here’s your four dollars,” said John. “This overcoat was hanging outside your shop, and I was wondering how much it was really worth.”
- 3.** She was very well dressed, and, as she walked into the fashionable milliner’s shop, the manageress herself came forward to serve her.

“I see by your advertisement,” she said, “that you have just received two thousand hats from Paris.”

“Yes, madam,” the respectful manageress informed her.

“Good,” said the girl, taking off her hat, “I wish to try them on.”
- 4.** Henry Brown arrived late at the country club dance, and discovered that in slipping on the icy pavement outside, he had torn his trousers.

“Come into the ladies’ dressing room, Henry,” said his wife. “There’s no one there and I’ll pin it up for you.”

Examination showed that the rip was too large to be pinned. A maid brought needle and thread and was stationed at the door to keep out intruders, while Mr. Brown took off his trousers. His wife went busily to work.

Suddenly an excited voice was heard: “We must come in, maid. Mrs. Jones is ill. Quick, let us in.”

“Here,” said the resourceful Mrs. Brown to her terrified husband, “get into this closet for a minute.”

She opened the door and pushed her husband through it just in time. But instantly, from the opposite side of the door came loud thumps and the agonized voice of Mr. Brown demanding that his wife open it at once.

“But the women are here,” Mrs. Brown objected.
“Oh, damn the women,” cried Mr. Brown, “I’m out in the ball-room.”

5. Brown: Why do people always select the serpent as the symbol of evil?
Robinson: Well, the poor thing hasn’t a leg to stand on.
6. Politician: Congratulate me, my dear, I’ve been elected a senator.
His wife (in surprise): Honestly?
Politician: Now what the devil did you want to bring up that point for?

V. Read and interpret the proverbs. Try to find Latvian equivalents.

1. Choose an author as you choose a friend.
2. Of two evils choose the lesser.
3. Nothing attempted nothing gained.
4. Either attempt it not, or succeed.
5. Try to tame a mad horse, but knock him not at head.
6. A joke never gains an enemy but often loses a friend.
7. Beggars cannot be choosers.
8. Grasp all, lose all.
9. He that spares the bad injures the good.
10. If there were no clouds, we should not enjoy the sun.
11. It is the first step that costs.
12. Politeness costs little (nothing), but yields much.
13. Poverty is not a shame, but the being ashamed of it is.
14. The rotten apple injures its neighbours.

VI. Use the proverbs in the situations.

VII. It is interesting to know that:

... the muff as a garment first appeared over 500 years ago in Venice, and was first worn by men. Women took a fancy to it at the end of the XVIII century, but at first they wore it only in summer.

... the students of Oxford University wear black gowns.

... present-day raincoats come from mackintoshes, coats made of waterproof material, named after the Englishman Charles Mackintosh (1766–1843), the inventor.

VIII. Read the statements and discuss them. Which of them seem old-fashioned and not acceptable for you?

1. One should not follow every turn of the latest fashions blindly. 2. A girl should adapt a fashion to her own personality and should not adapt herself to it, whether the fashion is suited to her or not. 3. Clothes should be neat, well-made, in perfect taste, but not too conspicuous. 4. Do not wear clothes that need constant arranging. 5. Accessories should always be in harmony with the dress and the wearer. 6. A woman does not take off her gloves to shake hands, no matter when and where, and never apologizes for wearing gloves when shaking hands. A man wearing gloves never shakes hands with a woman without first taking off his right glove. If in the street he cannot free his left hand to take his right glove off, he says "Excuse me glove". 7. When arranging a party, a hostess should be less elaborately dressed than her guests.

IX. Can you solve the problem?

CROSSING THE RIVER

One day a farmer had to cross a river, together with his dog, a sheep, and a bale of hay. The only boat available was so small that he could only get one animal or the hay into the boat besides himself. The trouble was, if the dog was left alone with the sheep, it would attack it; if the sheep was left alone with the hay, it would eat it.

How did the farmer get himself, the animals and the hay all safely across the river?

UNIT 3

O. HENRY (1862–1910)

O. Henry is one of the best known short-story writers of our century. The real name of the writer was William Sydney Porter. He was born in Greenboro, North Carolina in the family of a doctor. He was brought up by his aunt because his mother died when he was a small boy. After finishing school at the age of fifteen, Porter worked as a clerk for five years in his uncle's chemist shop in Greenboro. Then he went to Texas because he wanted to see new places. There he saw cowboys, prairies and mustangs, but it was not easy for him to find work. For two years he worked on a farm, then he became a clerk in an office and at last got a job in a small bank. During this period he studied languages and became interested in literature.

Soon he married and when a daughter was born to them, Porter was a happy husband and father, but his happiness did not last long.

One day a theft of a thousand dollars was discovered at the bank where he worked. Though it was not he who had taken the money, Porter left the town and went to Central America where he stayed for some time. But when he heard that his wife was very ill, he returned home and was put into prison for three years.

After his wife's death Porter very often thought about his little daughter. She was living with her relatives and was told that her father had gone very far away and would not return soon. The thought that she would not receive a Christmas present from him that year was a sad one. To get some money for a present, Porter decided to write a story and send it to one of the American magazines. The story "Whistling Dick's Christmas Present" was published in 1899, and Porter's daughter received a Christmas present. Porter had signed the story "O. Henry" – the pen-name that came into his head. While he was in prison, he published many other stories.

In 1901, when he was released from prison, he settled in New York, and continued writing short stories for different magazines.

Very soon he became one of the most popular short-story writers in America.

O. Henry's stories won great popularity and have been translated into many languages. Most of them have unexpected endings and the reader is always taken by surprise.

During his short literary activity, O. Henry wrote 273 short stories and one novel "Cabbages and Kings" (1904).

In his stories O. Henry describes amusing incidents of everyday life in large cities, on the farms, and on the roads of America. The author's sympathy is with the common people of America, whose life he knew very well. His greatest wish was that people should be happy.

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the real O. Henry's name?
2. Where was he born? Find this place on the map and tell what you know about this country.
3. What was his father's occupation?
4. Why was the writer brought up by his aunt?
5. At what age did he finish school? What did he do after that?
6. Why did he go to Texas? What do you know of Texas? Can you find it on the map?
7. What did he do in Texas?
8. What can you tell about his family life?
9. Why did Porter go to Central America?
10. When was he put into prison?
11. What was his daughter doing?
12. Why did he write a story? Was it published? What pen-name did he use to sign the story?
13. Where did he live when he was released from prison?
14. What did he describe in his stories?

THE COP AND THE ANTHEM

(an extract)

On his bench in Madison Square Soapy moved uneasily. When wild geese honk high of nights, and when women without sealskin coats grow kind to their husbands, and when Soapy moves uneasily on his bench in the park, you may know that winter is near at hand.

A dead leaf fell in Soapy's lap. That was Jack Frost's card. Jack is kind to the regular denizens of Madison Square, and gives fair warning of his annual call. At the corners of four streets he

hands his pasteboard to the North Wind, footman of the mansion of All Outdoors, so that the inhabitants thereof may make ready.

Soapy's mind became cognizant of the fact that the time had come for him to resolve himself into a singular Committee of Ways and Means to provide against the coming rigour. And therefore he moved uneasily on his bench.

The hibernatorial ambitions of Soapy were not of the highest. In them there were no considerations of Mediterranean cruises, of soporific Southern skies or drifting in the Vesuvian Bay. Three months on the Island was what his soul craved. Three months of assured board and bed and congenial company, safe from Boreas and bluecoats, seemed to Soapy the essence of things desirable.

Soapy, having decided to go to the Island, at once set about accomplishing his desire. There were many easy ways of doing this. The pleasantest was to dine luxuriously at some expensive restaurant; and then, after declaring insolvency, be handed over quietly and without uproar to a policeman. An accommodating magistrate would do the rest.

Soapy left his bench and strolled out of the square and across the level sea of asphalt, where Broadway and Fifth Avenue flow together. Up Broadway he turned, and halted at a glittering café, where are gathered together nightly the choicest products of the grape, the silkworm, and the protoplasm.

Soapy had confidence in himself from the lowest button of his vest upward. He was shaven, and his coat was decent and his neat black, ready-tied four-in-hand had been presented to him by a lady missionary on Thanksgiving Day. If he could reach a table in the restaurant unsuspected success would be his. The portion of him that would show above the table would raise no doubt in the waiter's mind. A roasted mallard duck, thought Soapy, would be about the thing – with a bottle of Chablis, and then Camembert, a demi-tasse and a cigar. One dollar for the cigar would be enough. The total would not be so high as to call forth any supreme manifestation of revenge from the café management; and yet the meat would leave him filled and happy for the journey to his winter refuge.

But as Soapy set foot inside the restaurant door the head waiter's eye fell upon his frayed trousers and decadent shoes. Strong and ready hands turned him about and conveyed him in silence and haste to the sidewalk and averted the ignoble fate of the menaced mallard.

Soapy turned off Broadway. It seemed that his route to the coveted Island was not to be an epicurean one. Some other way of entering limbo must be thought of.

At a corner of Sixth Avenue electric lights and cunningly displayed wares behind plate-glass made a shop window conspicuous. Soapy took a cobblestone and dashed it through the glass. People came running around the corner, a policeman in the lead. Soapy stood still, with his hands in his pockets, and smiled at the sight of brass buttons.

"Where's the man that done that?" inquired the officer excitedly.

"Don't you figure out that I might have had something to do with it?" said Soapy, not without sarcasm, but friendly, as one greets good fortune.

The policeman's mind refused to accept Soapy even as a clue. Men who smash windows do not remain to parley with the law's minions. They take to their heels. The policeman saw a man half way down the block running to catch a car. With drawn club he joined in the pursuit. Soapy, with disgust in his heart, loafed along, twice unsuccessful.

Would never a policeman lay hands on him? In his fancy the Island seemed an unattainable Arcadia. He buttoned his thin coat against the chilling wind.

At length Soapy reached one of the avenues to the east where the glitter and turmoil was but faint. He set his face down this towards Madison Square, for the homing instinct survives even when the home is a park bench.

But on an unusually quiet corner Soapy came to a standstill. Here was an old church, quaint and rambling and gabled. Through one violet-stained window a soft light glowed, where, no doubt, the organist loitered over the keys, making sure of his mastery of the coming Sabbath anthem. For there drifted out to Soapy's ears sweet music that caught and held him transfixed against the convolutions of the iron fence.

The moon was above, lustrous and serene; vehicles and pedestrians were few; sparrows twittered sleepily in the eaves – for a little while the scene might have been a country churchyard. And the anthem that the organist played cemented Soapy to the iron fence, for he had known it well in the days when his life contained such things as mothers and roses and ambitions and friends and immaculate thoughts and collars.

The conjunction of Soapy's receptive state of mind and the influences about the old church wrought a sudden and wonderful change in his soul. He viewed with swift horror the pit into which he had tumbled, the degraded days, unworthy desires, dead hopes, wrecked faculties, and base motives that made up his existence.

And also in a moment his heart responded thrillingly to this novel mood. An instantaneous and strong impulse moved him to battle with his desperate fate. He would pull himself out of the mire; he would make a man of himself again; he would conquer the evil that had taken possession of him. Those solemn but sweet organ notes had set up a revolution in him. To-morrow he would go into the roaring downtown district and find work. A fur importer had once offered him a place as driver. He would find him to-morrow and ask for the position. He would be somebody in the world. He would –

Soapy felt a hand laid on his arm. He looked quickly around into the broad face of a policeman.

"What are you doin' here?" asked the officer.

"Nothin'," said Soapy.

"Then come along," said the policeman.

"Three months on the Island," said the Magistrate in the Police Court the next morning.

PHRASES

1. to grow kind to sb.
2. to set about doing sth.
3. to raise doubt in
4. in the lead
5. to take to one's heels
6. to come to a standstill
7. to pull oneself out of the mire

VOCABULARY ITEMS

1. **hand** n – 1. part of the human arm beyond the wrist: with his hands in his pockets.

Phrases:

at hand – near. He lives close at hand. The examinations are at hand.

by hand – a) without the use of machinery. Are your socks knitted by hand?

b) without the use of the post office. The note was delivered by hand.

from hand to hand – directly, from one person to another. Buckets of water were passed from hand to hand to put the fire out.

give / lend sb. a hand (with sth.) – help with. Give me a hand with washing-up, please.

have one's hands full – be fully occupied.

have / get the upper hand (of sb.) – have / get the advantage or control (over).

have a free hand; give / allow sb. a free hand – permission to do what seems best without consulting others.

hand in hand – holding hands; together. War and misery go hand in hand.

Hands off! – Don't touch!

Hands up! – Put your hands up!

in hand – in reserve. I still have some money in hand.

in the hands of – being looked after or managed.

in God hands – being well cared for.

lift / raise a hand against sb. – threaten, attack him.

live from hand to mouth – spending money as soon as it is received.

off one's hands – taken from one's responsibility. I'd be glad to get it off my hands.

out of hand – out of control. The football fans have got quite out of hand.

shake hands with sb. – grasp his hands as a greeting.

take sth. / sb. in hand – take charge of.

wash one's hands of – say that one will no longer be responsible for.

2. power; possession; responsibility.

Phrase:

in sb's hands – The property is no longer in my hands.

3. person from whom news etc. comes: at first / second hand.

I learnt the news at first hand.

4. workman. The factory has taken 200 extra hands.

5. pointer or indicator on the dial of a watch / clock or other instrument: the hour hand of a watch.

Compounds:

hand-bag, hand-cuff, handful, hand-luggage, hand-made, hand-work, handwriting.

hand v – give or pass. Please hand me the book.

Phrases:

hand sth. down (to sb.) – pass by tradition; inheritance. We cannot always observe the traditions handed down to us from the past.

hand sth. out (to sb.) – distribute.

hand sth. in – give sth. to someone in charge.

hand sb. over (to sb.) – deliver a person to authority. He was handed over to the police.

handicap n – anything likely to lessen one's chance of success. Poor eyesight is a handicap.

handicraft n – art or craft needing skill with the hands.

handkerchief n

handy adj. – 1. (of persons) clever with the hands.

2. (of things) convenient, useful. A good toolbox is a handy thing to have in a house.

3. not far away; available for use. Always keep a first-aid kit handy.

2. die v – 1. come to the end of life; cease to live: flowers soon die if they are left without water.

die in one's bed – of old age or illness.

die in harness – while still at one's usual occupation, still working.

be dying for sth. / to do sth. – have a strong wish. We're all dying for a drink. She's dying to know where you've been.

2. pass from human knowledge; be lost. His fame will never die.

die away – lose strength, become faint or weak. The breeze died away.

die down – (of a fire in a fireplace, etc.) burn with less heat; (of excitement, etc.) become less violent; (of noise, etc.) become less loud.

die out – become extinct; come to a complete end. Many old customs are gradually dying out.

Antonym: *to live*.

dead adj – 1. (of plants, animals, persons) no longer living: dead flowers / leaves. The hunter fired and the tiger fell dead.

wait for a dead man's shoes – wait for sb. to die in order to step into his position.

the dead – all those who have died or been killed: to rise from the dead; the dead and the wounded.

2. without movement or activity: in the dead hours of the night.

be at / come to / reach a dead end – (fig.) the stage from which further progress appears impossible.

3. (of languages, customs, etc.) no longer used or observed.

dead language

4. (of the hands, etc.) numbed, e.g. by cold; unable to feel anything: dead fingers.

dead to – unconscious of, hardened against: dead to all feelings of shame.

dead silence – complete silence.

dead sleep – a deep sleep (as if dead).

5. that can no longer be used: a dead match; a dead wire. The telephone went dead.

deadline n – fixed limit of time for finishing a piece of work: meet a deadline.

Antonym: *alive, living*.

dead adv – completely; absolutely; thoroughly: dead beat / tired; dead certain / sure; dead drunk.

deaden v – take away, deprive of, force, feeling, brightness: drugs to deaden the pain; thick walls that deaden street noises.

deadly adj – 1. causing, likely to cause, death: deadly weapons / poison. Fog is one of the sailor's deadliest enemies.

2. filled with hate: deadly enemies.

3. that may result in damnation: the seven deadly sins.

4. like that of death: a deadly paleness.

death n – dying; ending of life. There have been several deaths from drowning here this summer.

at death's door – dying; in danger of death.

bore sb. to death – bore him extremely.

sick to death of sb. / sth. – extremely tired, bored, etc.

put sb. to death – kill him; execute him.

death-roll – list of persons killed (in war, in an earthquake, etc.).

Antonym: *life*.

deathless adj – never dying or forgotten; immortal: deathless fame / glory.

deathlike adj – like that of death: a deathlike silence.

3. fall n – 1. act of falling: a fall from a horse; a fall in price / temperature.

2. amount of rain that falls; distance by which sth. falls or comes down. The fall of the river here is six feet.

3. (often pl) place where a river falls over cliffs, etc. Niagara Falls.

4. (US) autumn: in the fall of 1970.

fall v – 1. *fall (down / over)* – come or go down freely. The book fell from the table to the floor. He fell over into the water.

fall on one's feet – (fig.) be fortunate; get out of a difficulty successfully. Some people always seem to fall on their feet.

2. *fall (down / over)* – no longer stand. Many trees fell in the storm. Babies often fall down when they are learning to walk.

fall flat on one's face – fall face down to the ground.

3. *fall (down)* – hang down. His beard fell to his chest. Her hair / cloak fell over her shoulders.

4. come or go to a lower level or point. The temperature fell rapidly. His voice fell to a whisper.

5. *fall (into)* – become; pass into. His horse fell lame. He fell silent. The old man fell asleep. He fell into a doze.

fall in love (with) – become filled with love (for). He fell in love with an actress.

fall out of love (with) – cease to feel love (for).

6. *fall upon* – descend upon. Darkness fell upon the scene. A great stillness had fallen upon everything.

7. (of a city, fort, etc.) be captured. Rome has fallen!

8. *fall on* – take the direction or position. A shadow fell on the wall. His eye fell on a curious object.

9. *fall on / upon / to* – come by chance, design, or right. All the expenses fell on me. The responsibility / blame, etc. fell upon me.

10. occur, have as date. Easter falls early next year. Christmas Day falls on a Monday this year.

fall back – retreat; move or turn back. Our attack was so vigorous that the enemy had to fall back.

fall behind (with sth.) – fail to keep level; lag. He always falls behind when we're going uphill. I've fallen behind with my correspondence.

fall down (on sth.): fall down on one's promises / obligations (to sb.).

fall for sth. / sb. – (colloq.) yield to the charms, attractions or merits of. He falls for every pretty face he sees. Did he fall for your suggestion.

fall in – collapse; give way. The roof fell in.

fall in with sb. / sth. – a) happen to meet.

b) agree to. He fell in with my views at once.

fall into sth. – be naturally divisible into. The subject falls into four divisions.

4. consider v – 1. think about. Please consider my suggestion. We are considering going to Canada.

2. take into account. We must consider the feelings of other people.

all things considered – taking into account, all the events, possibilities.

3. be of the opinion; regard as. They considered themselves very important. Do you consider it wise to interfere?

considerable adj – great; much; important: a considerable income / distance; a considerable man in local affairs.

considerably adv – much; a great deal. It's considerably colder this morning.

considerate adj – *considerate (of)* – thoughtful. It was considerate of you not to play the piano while I was having a sleep.

considerately adv

consideration n – 1. act of considering, thinking about. Please give the matter your careful consideration. The proposals are still under consideration.

leave sth. out of consideration – neglect or fail to consider it. There is one important fact that has been left out of consideration.

take sth. into consideration – (esp.) make allowances for. When marking Tom's examination papers, the teacher took Tom's long illness into consideration.

2. *consideration (for)* – quality of being considerate. He has never shown much consideration for his wife's feelings.

in consideration of; out of consideration for – considering.

3. sth. which must be thought about; fact, thing, etc. thought of as a reason. Time is an important consideration in this case. Several considerations have influenced me in coming to a decision.

on no consideration – in no circumstances; in no case.

considering prep – in view of; having regard to. She's very active, considering her age.

5. **reach** v – 1. *reach (out) (for)* – stretch out. He reached out his hand for the knife, but it was too far away. He reached (out) for the dictionary.

2. stretch out the hand for and take (sth.); get and give (sth.) to. Can you reach that book for your brother? Please reach me that book. He reached down the atlas from the top shelf.

3. (lit. or fig.) get to, go as far as: reach London; reach the end of the chapter.

4. extend; go; pass. My land reaches as far as the river. The speaker's voice did not reach to the back of the hall.

as far as the eye can reach – to the horizon.

Synonyms: *to reach, to achieve.*

These two words are frequently confused because they both may be translated into Latvian by "sasniegt". However, they cannot be used interchangeably.

To achieve – to carry sth. out successfully in spite of difficulties, to accomplish a difficult, especially a high, aim or purpose.

Synonyms: *to fulfill, to accomplish, to realize, to obtain, to attain.*

E.g. One must work regularly on phonetic exercises if one wants to achieve good results in the pronunciation of a foreign language.

To reach – to stretch out, to extend, to arrive at a certain place, to arrive at a certain period of time.

To reach is used only in the physical sense, when something quite tangible is concerned.

E.g. He is so tall he almost reaches the ceiling.

To achieve is used when the goal or aim is not directly perceptible; we achieve an aim or goal.

Phrases:

to reach old age; as far as the eye can reach; the memory reaches back over many years; to reach someone by telephone.

reach n – 1. (sing only) act of reaching or stretching out (a hand, etc.): get sth. by a long reach.

2. extent to which a hand, etc. can be reached out. This boxer has a long reach.

within / out of / beyond reach: I like to have my reference books within my reach / within easy reach. Put that bottle of weed-killer out of the children's reach / out of reach of the children.

3. continuous extent, esp. of a river or canal, that can be seen between two bends or locks: one of the most beautiful reaches of the Thames.

6. manage v – 1. control: manage a horse; manage a sailing-boat; manage a business / household; manage a naughty child / one's wife; the managing director.

2. *manage (to do sth.); manage (with / without sth. / sb.)* – succeed; contrive. I shan't be able to manage without help. We can't manage with these poor tools.

manageable adj – that can be managed; easily controlled.

manageability n

management n – 1. managing or being managed. The failure was caused by bad management. The business is under new management.

2. skilful treatment. It needed a good deal of management to persuade them to give me the job.

3. all those concerned in managing an industry, enterprise, etc.: joint consultation between workers and management. What this department store needs is a stronger management.

manager n – 1. person who controls a business, a hotel, etc.
2. one who conducts business, manages household affairs, etc. in a certain way. My wife is an excellent manager.

7. leave v – 1. go away from. When did you leave London?

leave for – go away to. We're leaving for Rome next week.

2. go away finally or permanently. When did you leave school?
He left medicine for the law.

3. neglect or fail to take. I've left my umbrella in the train. He left half his work until the next day.

leave sb. / sth. behind – neglect or forget to bring or take. The luggage has been left behind!

4. allow or cause to remain in a certain place or condition. Leave your hat and coat in the hall. Don't leave her waiting outside in the rain.

leave sb. / sth. alone – not touch, spoil or interfere with. Leave the cat alone.

leave sth. / sb. out – omit; fail to consider: leave out a possibility; leave out a letter.

leave sth. over – postpone. That matter can be left over until the committee meets next week.

leave it at that – do or say nothing more. There's nothing we can do; we must leave it at that.

leave sth. unsaid – not say it. Some things are better left unsaid.

leave much / a lot / sth. / nothing to be desired – be (un)satisfactory. His behaviour leaves a lot / nothing to be desired.

5. (cause to) remain; allow to remain. Three from seven leaves four ($7 - 3 = 4$). When I've paid all my debts, there'll be nothing left / I'll have nothing left.

Synonyms: *to leave, to quit, to abandon, to forsake, to desert.*

To leave to go away from a place or person. The general term. No reason is implied.

E.g. to leave school / work / the house / the theatre / neighbourhood etc.

To quit – to leave suddenly or to leave for good. *To quit* is more formal than *to leave* except in a few phrases such as “to give notice to quit” or “to quit office or service”. It is more in use in America than England.

E.g. The population wanted the occupying forces to quit the country. The house owner gave the tenants notice to quit.

To abandon – to give up (control or responsibility) completely; to throw or cast away; to withdraw from persons or things. *Abandon* can imply a dereliction of duty.

E.g. He abandoned all hope. Rats always abandon a sinking ship.

To forsake – to withdraw one’s help from; to leave entirely. *Forsake* is a literary term.

E.g. A doctor may not forsake his patients when they need treatment.

To desert – to leave intentionally in violation of duty; to fall (of courage, hope etc.).

E.g. to desert an army / one’s post. A man who deserts his wife has to pay her an allowance.

leave n – 1. period of absence; occasion of being absent from duty, etc.: have only two leaves in six years; a six months’ leave.
2. departure.

take (one’s) leave (of sb.) – say goodbye.

leave-taking n

8. rough adj – 1. (of surface) not level, smooth or polished; (of roads) of irregular surface, not easy to walk or ride on: rough paper; a fruit with a rough skin; cloth that is rough to the touch.
2. not calm or gentle: rough children; rough behaviour; a rough sea. Keep away from the rough quarter of the town. He has a rough tongue.

be rough on sb. – be unpleasant or unlucky for. It’s rather rough on her, having to live in a caravan.

give sb. / have a rough time – (cause sb. to) experience hardship.

3. made or done without attention to detail, esp. as a first attempt: a rough sketch / translation; lead a rough life away from civilization.

Synonyms:

I. *rough, harsh, uneven, rugged* come into comparison when they mean “having not a smooth surface”. These words differ in the shades of meaning and in usage.

Rough and *harsh* mean “coarse to the touch” as rough (harsh fabric, texture, skin) but: rough paper (hair, grass, clothes).

Rough applies to surfaces having ridges and projections, as rough surface, (road, stone etc.) e.g. Automobiles roared and rattled over the rough country roads all night long.

Rugged as applied to edges means “jagged” as a rugged coast (cliff).

Uneven means “not level”, “not flat”, an uneven ground (floor, country), e.g. The words of this synonymic group are widely used in the figurative sense.

Rough and *harsh* mean “disagreeable” and apply to things which impress one’s feelings as being devoid of graciousness: a rough / harsh voice (sound, tone, etc.).

Harsh, apart from rough, is applied to a person that is unfeeling, cruel, indifferent to the pain he inflicts: a harsh critic / man. It also means “severe”, “hard to bear”: a harsh judgement (rebuke, sentence; climate; struggle), harsh punishment (words).

Rough and *rugged* in reference to faces mean “heavy featured”, “irregular”.

Rugged implies greater irregularity than *rough*.

Uneven means “not uniform”: uneven performance / playing, acting.

II. *rough, rude, crude, raw* come into comparison when they mean “unmanufactured”, “uncultivated”, “unfinished”, “incomplete”, “not perfect”. In their literal meaning these words differ in usage, as it is shown in the following collocations:

1) rough steel; a rough diamond; a rough copy (sketch); rough chairs (tables);

- 2) rude ore; rude implements;
- 3) crude oil (petroleum, rubber, sugar);
- 4) raw cotton (silk, hides, material);
- 5) raw fish (meat, vegetables, eggs etc. = uncooked).

These words are widely used figuratively. In their figurative sense they are applicable to men, their minds and their manners.

Rough, rude, crude are close in meaning suggesting low state of culture, ignorance, impoliteness. However, these words differ in nuances.

Rough, in reference to people, their conduct and speech means “not refined or polished”, “uncivil”, as, a rough man; rough language; a rough reply; a rough way (= course of actions).

Rough, besides, means “uncultured but good-natured”, as, a plain, rough, honest man.

Rude may mean “barbarous”, “insolent”, “uncivil”, as, a rude man (reply, question); rude language.

Crude suggests lacking grace or taste.

E.g. He began to cheer her up with crude jokes and slap-stick actions.

Crude, besides is used in the sense of “not properly worked out”; “badly formed or done”, as, crude ideas (methods, acts).

Raw, when applied to man or man’s activities, means “inexperienced”, “untrained”, “unskilled”, as, a raw recruit (lad, youth, judgement).

roughly adv – 1. in a roughly manner: treat sb. roughly; a roughly made table.

2. approximately: at a cost of roughly £5; roughly speaking.

rough adv – in a rough manner: play rough; treat sb. rough.

live rough – live in the open (as a vagrant may do).

sleep rough – (of homeless persons) sleep out of doors or wherever there is some shelter.

9. run n – 1. act of running on foot: go for a short run across the fields.

at a run – running. He started off at a run but soon tired and began to walk.

2. excursion or visit: a run to Paris. Can we have a trial run in the new car?
 3. series of performances. The play had a long run / a run of six months.
 4. period; succession: a run of bad luck.
- in the long run* – ultimately. It pays in the long run to buy goods of high quality.
5. way in which things tend to move. The run of events is rather puzzling.
- run** v – 1. (of men and animals) move with quick steps. She ran to meet us.
2. practise running for exercise or as a sport; compete in races on foot. Is he running in the 100 metres?
 3. *run for* – (esp. US) compete for (an elected office). Cf stand for, the more usu. GB usage: run for President / for mayor.
- run its course* – develop in the usual or normal way. The disease ran its course.
4. go forward with a sliding, smooth or continuous motion; advance on. Trams run on rails; buses don't run on rails.
 5. be in action; work, be in working order. Don't leave the engine of your car running. The works have ceased running.
 6. organize; manage; cause to be in operation: run a business / a theatre / a bus company; run extra trains during the rush hours.
 7. (of liquids, grain, sand, etc.) flow, drip; (of surfaces) be wet (with); (of colours, e.g. dyes) flow and spread. Rivers run into the sea. The tears ran down my cheeks. The floor was running with water. Will the colours run if the dress is washed?
- run a temperature* – (colloq.) be feverish.
8. extend; have a certain course or order; be continued or continuous: a road that runs across the plain. It happened several days running. He hit the target seven times running. The play ran (for) six months.
 9. be told or written. The story runs that ... The agreement runs in these words.

Phrases:

run across – pay a short informal visit: run across to a neighbour's flat to borrow some sugar.

run across sb. / sth. – meet or find by chance. I ran across my old friend Jean in Paris last week.

run after sb. / sth. – a) try to catch. The dog was running after a rabbit.

b) seek the society of; go after in order to get the attention of. She runs after every good-looking man in the village.

run away – leave rapidly; flee; escape. Don't run away – I want your advice.

run back over sth. – review past events, etc.: run back over the past. I'll run back over the procedure again.

run sth. back – rewind (film, tape, etc.).

run down – (of a battery) become weak or exhausted. The battery is / has run down; it needs recharging.

(be / feel / look) run down – (of a person, his health) exhausted or weak from overwork, mental strain, etc.

run sb. / sth. down – knock down or collide with. The liner ran down a fishing-boat during the dense fog. The cyclist was run down by a big lorry.

run into sb. – meet unexpectedly: run into an old friend in a pub.

run into sth. – a) collide with. The bus got out of control and ran into a wall.

b) fall into: run into debt / danger / difficulties.

c) reach (a level or figure): a book that has run into six editions. His income runs into five figures, is now ten thousand (pounds, dollars, etc.) or more.

run off sb. (like water off a duck's back) – have no effect on him. Her warning ran off him like water off a duck's back.

run out – a) go out. The tide is running out.

b) (of a period of time) come to an end. When does the lease of the house run out?

c) (of stocks, supplies) come to an end, be exhausted; (of persons) become short of (supplies, etc.). Our provisions are running out. Her patience is running out.

run over sth. – a) review; recapitulate. Let's run over our parts again, e.g. when learning and rehearsing parts in a play.

b) read through quickly. He ran over his notes before starting his lecture.

run over sb.; run sb. over – (of a vehicle) (knock down and) pass over. The bus ran over his legs. He was run over and had to be taken to hospital.

runner n – person, animal, etc. that runs. How many runners were there in the Derby?

running adj – 1. continuous: a running fire of questions.
2. (of water) flowing: hot and cold running water.

10. spend v – 1. *spend money (on sth.)* – pay out (money) for goods, services, etc.: spend all one's money; spend too much money on clothes.

2. *spend sth. (on sth. / (in) doing sth.)* – use up; consume: spend a lot of time on a project / (in) explaining a plan.

3. pass: spend a weekend in London / one's spare time gardening.

spender n – person who spends money: an extravagant spender.

spent (pp as adj) – exhausted; used up: a spent runner / swimmer / horse; a spent cartridge / bullet.

11. change v – 1. *change (from / out of) (to / into); change (for)* – leave one place and go to, enter, another; take off sth. and put sth. else on. I must change these trousers – they've got oil on them. It won't take me five minutes to change, to put on different clothes. He changed out of his overalls (and into a suit).

2. *change sth. (for / into sth. else)* – give and receive in return. Can you change this five-pound note? Shall we change seats?

3. *change (from) (into / to)* – make or become different. My plans have changed. Caterpillars change into butterflies or moths. The traffic lights changed from red to green.

change one's mind – decide on a new plan, have a new opinion, etc.

change one's note / tune – become more humble, sad.

changeable adj – likely to alter; often altering; able to be changed: changeable weather; a changeable sort of person.

Antonym: *unchangeable*.

change n – 1. changed or different condition(s): a welcome change from town to country life. We have a new house – it's a great change for the better. Take a change of clothes with you. He had to make a quick change at Crewe.

a change of air / climate – e.g. a holiday away from home.

2. money in small(er) units; money that is the difference between the price or cost of sth. and the sum offered in payment. Can you give me change for a one-pound note? I have no small change.

3. alteration; changing. We shall have to make a change in the programme. Let's hope there will be a change in the weather.

for a change – for the sake of variety. I usually have breakfast at 7.30, but during the holidays I'm having it at 8.30 for a change.

changeful adj – continually changing; likely to change.

changeless adj – unchanging.

Synonyms: *to change, to alter, to modify, to vary*.

To change suggests making or becoming different in an essential way. The idea of substitution of one thing for another may also be implied.

E.g. His face has changed beyond recognition.

To alter denotes a partial change.

E.g. Could you alter my trousers (so that they fit better)?

To modify often indicates a minor difference or the idea of making less strong or severe whilst retaining the fundamentals. But it can also indicate an improvement from what had been unsatisfactory.

E.g. By and large I approve of the contract. There are just some minor modifications I would like to suggest.

To vary is used if the idea is to shift from one to the other and back again if necessary, or to display a certain range of difference.

E.g. The resourceful teacher knows how to vary his methods.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Consult a dictionary and practise the pronunciation of the following words:

denizen, mansion, cognizant, rigour, hibernatorial ambitions, cruise, soporific, to crave, congenial, luxuriously, silkworm, protoplasm, missionary, mallard duck, Chablis, Camembert, demi-tasse, manifestation, revenge, refuge, frayed, decadent, ignoble, menaced, coveted, epicurean, limbo, to parley, minion, Arcadia, turmoil, lustrous, immaculate, instantaneous.

II. Explain the polysemy of the words and phrases in italics and then translate the sentences.

A. 1. He was holding a book in his *hands*. 2. She saw him drinking from cupped *hands*. 3. She felt that winter was *at hand*. 4. The class is quite out of *hand* and something should be done immediately. 5. Don't worry, I'll put it in the *hands* of my lawyer. 6. These rugs are made by *hand*. 7. I have sent a letter by *hand*. 8. The waiter *handed* me a telegram. 9. Could you *hand* me down that book from the shelf. 10. The picture was *handed down* to me from my grandfather. 11. You must *hand in* your application in March. 12. *Hand over* that knife immediately!

B. 1. Shakespeare *died* in 1616. 2. Flowers soon *die* if they don't get water. 3. Do tell me what he said, I'm *dying* to know. 4. I'm *dying* for a drink. 5. His secret *died* with him. 6. The colours of the sunset *died away*. 7. The fire had *died down* and the room was getting cold. 8. Throw those flowers out: they are *dead*. 9. The train came to a *dead stop*. 10. I was *dead tired*. 11. His foolish boldness will be his *death*.

C. 1. He *fell* out of the window. 2. There was a big hole and she *fell* in. 3. He *fell* on his knees and begged mercy. 4. The temperature *fell* rapidly. 5. The woman tempted him and he *fell*. 6. A shadow *fell* on the screen. 7. We drew lots and the lot *fell* on me. 8. The cloak *fell* from his shoulders. 9. A mist *fell* over the valley. 10. I had a nasty *fall* from the tree. 11. There is a considerable *fall* in the water level of the lake. 12. You can't expect a big *fall* in prices. 13. Take the magazine and have a look at new *fall* fashions.

D. 1. Please *consider* the possible consequences of this behaviour. 2. We hadn't *considered* what might happen if we refused to help them. 3. Before buying a new computer, I think we should *consider* the cost. 4. "Dad! Will you lend me the car this weekend?" – "I'll *consider* it." 5. Ask Jack if he's *considering* applying for the Senior Manager's post. 6. For any skin problem, it's worth *considering* a change of diet.

E. 1. This ladder won't *reach* the window. 2. Look at her skirt – it hardly *reaches* her knees! 3. He hardly *reached* my shoulders. 4. The stick doesn't *reach* the bottom. 5. When we *reached* the bridge it was already dark. 6. The train *reached* Riga at 6 o'clock. 7. His voice doesn't *reach* to the back of the hall. 8. Can you *reach down* my case? 9. Where can I *reach* you? 10. Put those bottles out of *reach* of the children. 11. He *reached* for the salt and knocked over a bottle of wine. 12. These cars are *within reach* of many people.

F. 1. I'll be away for a week, do you think you can *manage* on your own? 2. Her brother *manages* her affairs. 3. I can't *manage* the boat alone. 4. Can you *manage* dinner on Wednesday? 5. I got a taxi and *managed* to catch the train. 6. I'll not be able *to manage* without your help. 7. If you can't afford to buy a new coat, you'll have to *manage* without. 8. The *manager* of a shop is a young man.

G. 1. The directors did not want David *to leave*, but they knew he could do much more somewhere else. 2. The police wanted to know what time he *had left* the office. 3. I want to see you before I *leave*. 4. He promised he would never *leave* her. 5. Bob *has left* me for his secretary, after fifteen years of marriage. I can't believe it! 6. My eldest son upon *leaving* college, fell in love and got married. 7. It is vital that young people *leave* full-time education with appropriate skills and qualifications. 8. This has been such a lovely home I'll be sorry *to leave*. 9. The gang had *left* town before the police discovered the robbery. 10. Jim *had left* home at 18 to find a job in New York. 11. Oh, *I've left* my gloves home. 12. Leave that bag alone, it's not yours. 13. Could you tell me the time? I've *left* my watch behind. 14. I think he's just *left* for Riga. 15. Don't you see you've *left* two words *out*? 16. He feels *left out*.

H. 1. A new kitchen would cost *roughly* Ls 500. 2. The man was *roughly* my own age. 3. It was a *rough* crossing and most of the passengers were seasick. 4. We have drawn up a *rough* plan but we haven't worked out all the costs. 5. Here are some *rough* calculations of the costs. 6. I can only give a *rough* indication where the problems lie. 7. The farm can only be reached by means of a *rough* track. 8. "What are you doing here?" shouted the man in a *rough* voice. 9. She was surprised at how *rough* his hands felt. 10. The police have been criticized for their *rough* handling of the demonstrators.

I. 1. You'd better *run* or you'll miss the train. 2. This dog *ran* right out in front of my car. 3. Every morning before breakfast I *run* or play tennis. 4. The race is *run* over a 3 mile course. 5. He *is running* a high temperature. 6. The illness must *run* its course. 7. When he starts speaking of his hobby I *run* a mile. 8. The Liberals are not *running* a candidate this year. 9. I'll *run* you to the station. 10. She *runs* a small business. 11. The school is *run* by a committee. 12. The magazine is *running* a series of articles on animals. 13. You have *to run* the water for a few minutes till it gets hot. 14. A shiver *ran* down his spine. 15. Red hair *runs* in their family. 16. The lawnmower *runs* on petrol. 17. There are no buses *running* today. 18. The river *runs* for 200 miles and then flows into the sea. 19. The melted wax *ran* down the candle. 20. Wash this towel separately – the dye *runs*. 21. The play *ran* for 40 performances. 22. The road *runs* beside the river. 23. My stocking *has run*.

J. 1. I bought two dresses and a pair of shoes and *spent* all my spare money. 2. More should be *spent* on health and education services. 3. In recent years the company has *spent* a lot of money on new technology. 4. He *spends* money like there's no tomorrow! 5. Peter and I *spend* a lot of time together. 6. You've *spent* the whole afternoon in digging one small flower garden! 7. You may have to *spend* more than a year on your book. 8. I *spent* a lot of energy in getting the spare parts. 9. I *spent* a week in Paris. 10. Our ammunition *is spent*.

K. 1. It won't take me five minutes *to change*. 2. He *changed* his money before leaving France. 3. He's *changed* his position. 4. The

appearance of the town is quite *changed*. 5. The wind has *changed* from north to east. 6. There has been a great *change* in his appearance since his last illness. 7. We have a new house now: it's a *change* for the better. 8. I have no small *change*. 9. Don't leave your *change* on the shop counter. 10. He is a *changeable* sort of person.

III. Give your own sentences or situations with the following word combinations and translate the combinations into Latvian. Is it always possible to give a word for word translation?

1. to bring up a calf by hand; to eat out of one's hand; from hand to hand; to give a hand; to have one's hands full; to have a free hand; in good hands; not lift a hand; to live from hand to mouth; off one's hands; shake hands with sb.; at first / second hand; to wash one's hands of; on the one hand ... on the other; to hand sth. down; to hand sth. out; to come in handy.

2. to be dying for sth. / to do sth.; to wait for a dead man's shoes; to come to a dead end; dead silence; to meet a deadline; deadly paleness; at the death's door; to bore sb. to death; dead fingers.

3. to fall on one's feet; temperature / voice / spirits fell; to fall in love; to fall out of love; to fall for sb. / sth.

4. to consider oneself lucky; to consider it one's duty; to consider other people's feelings; a considerable difficulty; a considerable income.

5. to reach for a dictionary; to reach the branch; as far as the eye can reach; out of the children's reach; beautiful reaches of the Thames.

6. to manage a horse; to manage a sailing-boat; to manage a business; to manage a naughty child; a managing person; to manage to do sth.; to manage with / without sth. / sb.; bad management.

7. to leave school; to leave sth. / sb. alone; to leave sth. inside; to leave much to be desired; to take (one's) leave of sb.

8. the rough quarters of the city; rough crossing; to lead a rough life; a rough tongue; to treat sb. roughly; roughly speaking; sleep rough; live rough.

9. a trial run; in the long run; the run of events; to run for President; to run its course; to run a business; to run extra trains; to run a car; to run errands for sb.; to run a temperature; to run off sb.; hot and cold running water; to run a risk.

10. to spend money; to spend time; ammunition was spent; to spend one's leisure; a spent runner; a spent horse; a spent bullet.

11. to change one's address; to change places; to change one's mind; a changeable sort of person; changeable weather; change for the better; a change of clothes; a change of air; small change; a change in programme.

IV. What nouns can you add to the following adjectives:

dead; dying; deathless; deathlike; changeable; changeful; changeless; falling; fallen; manageable; rough; running; spent; considerable; considerate.

V. Paraphrase the italicized words and phrases by using suitable active vocabulary.

1. hand

1. When I've finished this part of the wall, I'll *pass* the brushes and paint pots *down* to you before I come down the ladder. 2. This ring has been *passed down* in my family. 3. Your new papers must be *given in* by Monday. 4. *Give out* the question papers as the students enter the examination room. 5. I had some good news *to pass along*, don't you want to hear it? 6. The firm paid a man to stand on the street corner *giving out* advertisements. 7. I should like to get rid of the responsibility for this job, but there doesn't seem to be anyone fit to *give over to*.

2. fall

1. Whenever impressionism was brought up to academicians they *came down on it* in disapproval. 2. My plans to go to the USA for holidays *failed* for lack of time. 3. Though the picture was not a genuine Rembrandt, we *liked* it at once. 4. You are wrong from start to finish, and nobody is likely to *share* your views. 5. Could you use your influence to persuade him *to agree to* the scheme suggested by us? 6. It cut him to the quick when I told him that their newspaper *had had lower sales* lately. 7. Last month road

accidents in this area sharply *went down*. 8. His injured leg was much of the handicap during the event and he *got behind* the other contestants. 9. "You haven't *given* me your homework *yet*," said the teacher. 10. He used to be an ardent champion for the rights of women. Now he is married and his enthusiasm seems to *become much smaller*.

3. reach

1. Can you *pass down* the big dish for me from the top shelf. 2. There was no time for me to *stretch my hand* for the gun. 3. The tax bill *runs* into thousands of dollars. 4. My voice doesn't *go to* those very high notes. 5. None of the kids can *get* to the top button in the elevator. 6. By the end of the first day we had *got to* a small town 500 km south of Paris.

4. manage

1. If I can't afford a new car, we shall have *to do without*. 2. The director should not have *to do without* a secretary. 3. Helen was always a difficult child. None of her teachers knew how *to deal with* her. 4. The seminar discusses typical work-related problems and strategies *to deal with them*. 5. He has finally *succeeded in* getting a new flat. 6. She didn't think she could jump that far, but somehow she *succeeded*. 7. My husband *runs* a mill, 200 miles north of Bombay. 8. *Running* four pizza outlets is extremely hard work.

5. run

1. *Repeat* your story again while the incident is fresh in your mind. 2. The ships *came into collision* with each other. 3. The clock *has stopped*. 4. My money is *exhausted*. 5. His passport *expires* next month. Will you see to it that he renews it in time or he may *get into trouble*. 6. At Hyde Park Corner Soames *met by chance* George Forsyte, very sunburnt from racing. 7. "Jack makes me tired." "It's your own fault, dear. You should stop *seeking his society*." 8. Irene watched the little boy *playing about*. 9. We *have no sugar left*. 10. At the rehearsal I shall *go through* my part again. 11. The motorist *knocked down* a man on a bicycle.

6. spend

1. How much did you *pay* for that book? 2. You have *passed* the whole afternoon in digging one small flower garden! 3. The city

council has been charged with *paying out* too much of the taxpayers' money on sports buildings.

VI. Supply the appropriate particles.

1. hand

1. Please hand ... the large dish from the top shelf, I can't reach it.
2. This custom has been handed ... since the 18th century. 3. Your text papers must be handed ... by Monday. 4. As the lady tried to step down from the carriage, the gentleman politely handed her ... 5. I hand more money ... to the children every week. 6. Hand your cases ... to the doorman, he will see that they are delivered to your room. 7. The command of the ship was handed ... to her new captain at a small ceremony this morning. 8. I'll stand by the car and hand the boxes ... to you, so that you can carry them into the house.

2. fall

1. Her book enjoyed but a moment's popularity. The interest aroused fell ... rapidly. 2. The young mother enjoying the endless why-questions' talk of her five-year old son, fell ... the company. 3. They fell ... their work and had to stay up till late at night. 4. The attack was so sudden that the enemy had to fall ... leaving their prisoners and transport. 5. Don't fall ... him so heavily. He admits that he has acted recklessly, but what's done cannot be undone. 6. When the hikers came back to the camp they were as hungry as hunters and fell ... food placed before them. 7. The business talks fell ... as neither side would give in. 8. I admit that the outing fell ... because it had not been planned well. 9. The demand for fabrics has fallen ... recently. 10. What kind of person would you fall ... at first sight?

3. considerate / consideration

1. She is considerate ... others. 2. A new pension plan for employers is now ... consideration. 3. We must do it ... consideration ... her age. 4. Before we decide what to do we must take all facts ... consideration. 5. When I gave my consent I left many factors ... consideration.

4. run

1. His condition is grave. He was run ... by a lorry yesterday but the doctors still hope that he will pull through. 2. I forgot to wind up my watch yesterday and it has run ... now. 3. Engines need running ... before they are put in full operation. 4. This time Martin ran ... money sooner than he had expected and no letters from publishers arrived. 5. We've got a few minutes, before the train starts, so I'll just run ... your instructions again. 6. The lease ran ... on the 30th of October and the landowner insisted on the eviction of the poor family. 7. The mother laid in a good stock of provisions before she left but he ran ... it all in a couple of weeks. 8. The woman realized that her life was a failure but tried to run ... from reality. 9. It was a lucky chance that I ran ... Smith. But for him I'd have had nowhere to put up for the night in that town.

VII. Choose the right word: *die, dead, death.*

1. Walter Scott, the great poet and novelist, ... in 1832. 2. Throw those flowers out, they are ... 3. The ground was covered with ... leaves. 4. The young soldier was wounded to ... and was carried away from the battlefield. 5. ... came instantly, and she had been ... for some time but then she was reanimated. 6. Where did Byron ...?

VIII. Fill in the appropriate synonyms:

a) to reach, to achieve

1. I hope we can ... the house before the storm breaks out. 2. At the end of an hour we ... the top of the mountain. 3. Good pronunciation can be ... by daily repetition of phonetic drills. 4. The sea was so rough and we were so far out, that the shore seemed out of ... 5. The sportsmen of our country ... outstanding results in many fields of sport. 6. If we hurry we can ... the theatre in time. 7. He ... the opposite bank of the river with great difficulty because he had to swim against the current. 8. Don't ... across the table for bread, ask someone to pass it to you. 9. The lecturer spoke so distinctly that every word ... the audience.

b) leave, quit, abandon, forsake, desert

1. He ... the army after one day. 2. He can't sack me. I ...! 3. My husband ... home early this morning (i.e. to go to work). 4. It takes good judgement to know when to stay and when to ... 5. Have you ... your intention of going on the stage? 6. A captain must never ... his ship. 7. What sort of impression do you think I ... (on them)? 8. As soon as she ... one idea, she started snatching at another. 9. I advise you to ... before it's too late. 10. When the bomb exploded, the whole audience rose and ... the theatre! 11. "I'm ... school next summer." – "What is the school-... age now?" 12. A monk ... all wordly pleasures. 13. ... my sight – and never return. 14. An ... wife is to be pitied. 15. Not one soldier ... through the whole campaign. 16. I cannot and will not ... those who have placed their trust in me. 17. He ... the army as he disliked the discipline. 18. The crew ... the captain, and left him to his fate. 19. She felt so ... and alone. 20. Never ... a job before you have finished it. 21. I'm glad that family has ... this neighbourhood. 22. Only politeness prevented me from ... the room earlier. 23. The beach was ... as it was lunchtime. 24. He ... the room in anger. 25. Wretched parents sometimes ... their babies in church doorways. 26. Never ... a friend in need. 27. I'm ...; I've had enough. 28. You must ... all thoughts of escape. 29. They ... the hotel without paying a bill. 30. Courage ...them when they saw that the odds were against them.

c) to change, to alter, to modify, to vary

1. I want you to ... these trousers. Take them in two inches at the waist. 2. Will you please ... this dress? It's too tight. 3. The treaty was ... to suit all signatories. 4. ... is the spice of life. (Old saying) 5. I like to ... my reading. 6. I think we should ... the design of the house. 7. It is no good trying to ... the weather. Only nature can do it. 8. You'll have to ... the expression before it is printed. 9. Kindly ... you language when there's a lady present. 10. It is not easy to ... people's habits. 11. "What History syllabus is used in England?" – "It ... from school to school." 12. If things don't ..., they'll stay as they are. (Old saying) 13. They want to ... the whole school system. 14. A girl ... her name when she gets married. 15. Our plan will have to be ... a little. 16. He always ... his tone when he talks to me.

17. I refuse to ... the portrait to suit your vanity. 18. To ... conditions is not always to improve them. 19. Always try to ... a child's diet. 20. Notice outside a tailor's shop: We do ... 21. I hope you aren't going to ... your mind. 22. Here is the ... version of the script you asked for. 23. I've decided to ... the arrangements. 24. I don't want you to ... I love you as you are. 25. His performances ... from night to night. He's most erratic. 26. They have ... the length of coats this year, by introducing the "maxi". 27. His sermons never ... 28. After I told him off, he ... his behaviour considerably. 29. I haven't changed my fundamental beliefs. I've only ... them a little in the light of experience.

d) rough, rude, crude, raw

1. "Mr. Smith," he said, "I don't want to be ..., but as a matter of fact I'm very tired and it's not much good your sitting here." 2. The book answered in a ... way the question which had been annoying him for a long time: "What is true love?" 3. "... soldierly manners," she said. 4. I was young and inexperienced, too sensitive, too ... 5. I did not mind if they thought me ... and ungracious. 6. He was a ..., brutal, yet kind-hearted man, in his own way. 7. He sat down on one of the ... wooden chairs in the living room.

e) rough, harsh, uneven, rugged

1. The travellers walked wearily up the ... mountainous road; it was covered with heaps of stones and crossed by deep clefts. 2. The child made a few steps. The ... grass hurt his bare feet. 3. It was difficult to adjust the tripod straight on the ... surface of the rock. 4. The passengers aboard the plane watched the ... coastline. 5. In many of his novels Dickens described ... treatment of children in English private schools. 6. The ... sounds of the jazz grated on the musician's ear. 7. It had rained, and the ... stones were slippery, so that the mountaineers had to tie themselves to one another.

IX. Complete the following sentences.

1. Fluency of speech in a foreign language can be achieved by ...
2. If you cannot reach me by phone, please ...
3. Our sportsmen achieved splendid results thanks to ...
4. If you cannot reach the top shelf you must ...
5. Just as I reached home I remembered that ...
6. Martin Eden achieved fame and recognition only after ...

7. Tom was so small, he could hardly reach ... 8. The telegram reached me when ... 9. The book is on the shelf. Can you ...?

X. Translate into English.

Rupjš, neaudzināts cilvēks; raupja āda; rupja atbilde; rupjš audums; rupjas manieres; sastrādātas, raupjas rokas; rupja balss; rupji sejas panti; jēlnafta; nerafinēts cukurs; neapstrādāts tērauds; jēlāda; bargs sods; bargs klimats; jēla gaļa; nevārīti dārzeņi; cieti, rupji mati; raupjš papīrs; jēlas olas; nelīdzens ceļš; neslīpēts dimants; jēlviela; grumbuļains ceļš; stingrs kritiķis; neveikls puisis; jēlkokvilna; neveikla situācija; jēlspirts; jēlzīds.

XI. Answer the questions.

1. When do people say "It's a small world." 2. What do you think of people who run away from difficulties? 3. Why do teenagers run after celebrities? 4. Would a doctor let a person resume his work if he feels run down? 5. What's to be done if the battery of the electric torch has run down? 6. Why is the sign "Running in" put on the front and back windows of a new bus? 7. Whom did you run into during your last holiday? 8. Do you think running over a book can help a student before an exam if he does not know his subject well? 9. Would you let a child run across a busy street alone? Why? 10. What would you do if you ran out of sugar at home? 11. Do you usually fall in with the arrangements of the friends you stay with? Why? 12. Do theatre attendances fall off in summer? Why? 13. What do you do to avoid your arrangements falling through? 14. Suppose that a student has fallen behind the group. What would you advise him to catch up? 15. Will the electricity supply be cut off if you fall behind with the payment of your bill? 16. What do you do if you haven't got a dictionary at hand when you need it? 17. Do you like things made by hand? Why? 18. What could a teacher do if the class is quite out of hand? 19. Do you want to try your hand at teaching English now? Why? 20. Do you have anything handed down to you from your grandparents? What is it? 21. What do people do when they leave school? 22. Do you often leave your things behind? 23. Do you think you could be a good manager? 24. Do you always manage to keep your temper? What can be done to keep it? 25. Should medicine be always kept out of the

children's reach? 26. Do you like people who have a rough tongue? 27. What do we call a rough translation? 28. Do you spend much money on your clothes? 29. How do you spend your leisure?

XII. In what circumstances would you say:

1. No wonder he fell for her at once. 2. This is just the kind of idea he would fall in with. 3. Just see, how your friends will start falling off now. 4. Of course, he fell behind from the very start. 5. Well, the plan has fallen through finally. 6. Her tongue ran away with her. 7. He looks run down. 8. The car couldn't have run into the bus. 9. He is sure to run through all the money within a week. 10. His behaviour leaves a lot of to be desired. 11. Don't leave me out, please! 12. I shan't be able to manage without help. 13. Can you reach the branch with those red apples? 14. My suitcase has had some rough handling. 15. Keep away from the rough quarters of the town. 16. I can see this is a spent horse.

XIII. Translate into English.

1. Lūdzu pārskatiet kontroldarbu vēlreiz, pirms to nododat. 2. Miglā tvaikonis sadūrās ar mazu zvejas laiviņu. 3. Es nevaru atļauties patreiz tādus izdevumus. 4. Šī doma caurvij visu lugas darbību. 5. Brīdī, kad krustmāte Pollija parādījās uz mājas sliekšņa, Toms pazuda aiz sētas. 6. Man nepatīk tie autogrāfu kolekcionētāji, kas skrien pakaļ (pēc) slavenībām tikai tāpēc, lai pēc tam varētu ar šiem autogrāfiem palielīties. 7. Lai izvairītos no tikšanās ar bijušajiem paziņām un draugiem, Anna reti gāja iepirkties pilsētas centrā. 8. Laikraksti ziņoja, ka biežās miglas un slikto laika apstākļu dēļ bija sadūrušies divi vilcieni. 9. Tagad grūti pat noticēt, ka vēl pirms pāris gadiem viņi visi vienoti uzbruka šai teorijai. 10. Ieraudzījusi Džona dusmīgo seju, viņa saprata, ka viņa projekts ir cietis neveiksmi. 11. Viņš šo-mēnes nokavēja apmaksāt īresnaudu. 12. Tiklīdz paziņoja par ceļojuma maršruta izmaiņām, ceļotgribētāju skaits saruka. 13. Pēkšņi ieradās policija, un streikotājiem nācās atkāpties. 14. Maz ticams, ka viņi piekritīs jūsu argumentiem, jo tie ir samērā nepārliciecināmi. 15. Ar gripu saslimušo skaits pēdējā laikā ir strauji samazinājies. 16. Es apzinos, ka ārējais izskats bieži ir maldinošs, taču viņš man patika no pirmā acu uzmetiena. 17. Koku galotnes sniedzās līdz māju jumtiem.

18. Sakiet, lūdzu, kā es varu nokļūt stacijā? 19. Sasnieguši kalna galotni, mēs apsēdāmies atpūsties. 20. Pastāstiet, lūdzu, kā jūs sasniedzāt tik labus rezultātus? 21. Skat, kā zēns izaudzis. Viņš jau sniedzas tēvam līdz pleciem. 22. Kad mēs sasniedzām krustceles, mēs nezinājām, pa kuru ceļu nogriezties. 23. Viņu sasniegumi šajā zinātnes nozarē ir ievērojami. 24. Nedrīkst apstāties pie sasniegtā, jāiet tālāk. 25. No kā mira Napoleons? – Runā, ka viņu noindēja. 26. Mans draugs mira no plaušu karsoņa. 27. Kas uzrauga jūsu bērnus – tava māte? – Nē, mana māte nomira. 28. Zēns paņēma meiteni pie rokas un ievēda klasē. 29. Uz atvadām paspiedis savu bijušo kolēģu rokas, Tomass atstāja vietu, kur bija nostrādājis desmit gadus. 30. Es šos jaunumus dzirdēju no pirmavotiem. 31. Ziema jau bija pie durvīm. 32. Abi bērni gāja pa ielu, sadevušies rokās. 33. Var sacīt, ka māju viņš uzcēla pats savām rokām. 34. Šo lietu es ņēmu savās rokās. 35. Viņš ir atvaļinājumā. 36. Zēns atvadījās no draugiem un devās uz mājām. 37. Atstāj to manā ziņā. 38. Māte aizmirsa rokassomiņu mašīnā. 39. Viņi uzveļ visu darbu šai trauklajai sievietei. 40. Mums ir atlikusi stunda līdz vilciena atiešanai. 41. Pēc sevis viņš atstāja vienu dēlu un divas meitas. 42. Vakara mana draudzene aizbrauca uz Londonu. 43. Šis vecais vīrs vada veselu pētniecības institūtu. 44. Viņas brālis kārto visas viņas lietas. 45. Viņš nevarēja tikt galā ar darbu. 46. Vai tu vari panest šo čemodānu? 47. Viņa ģimene gluži labi iztiek ar 200 latiem mēnesī. 48. Bez naudas nevar iztikt. 49. Man izdevās dabūt biļetes uz šo koncertu. 50. Esmu pamanījis pazaudēt garāžas atslēgas. 51. Īpašuma pārvaldnieks bija jauns cilvēks. 52. Sākumā viņš uzzīmēja mājas projektu uzmetuma variantā. 53. No smagā darba viņas rokas bija kļuvušas raupjas. 54. Jaunais vīrietis bija ļoti ass pret mani. 55. Mums klājās smagi pagājušā gadā. 56. Pēc pāris dienām, kad bijām atstājuši dzimto krastu, jūra kļuva nemierīga. 57. Tulkojums ir tikai uzmetuma variantā. 58. Viņi izmantoja rupjas metodes, lai panāktu to, ko vēlējās. 59. Savu brīvo laiku viņš pavadā, lasot grāmatas par augiem un augu dzīvi. 60. Par savu jauno kažoku viņa iztērēja veselu kaudzi naudas. 61. Jaunlaulātie pavadīja divas nedēļas Parīzē. 62. Ienaidnieka munīcija izbeidzās. 63. Es uzskatu, ka tu neesi vainīgs. 64. Uzskatu, ka mans pienākums ir pateikt jums, ka jums draud briesmas. 65. Viņu uzskata par izcilu pianistu. 66. Vai tu nedomā, ka mums būtu jābrauc ar vilcienu?

67. Pirms ej uz sarunu ar direktoru, apdomā rūpīgi savu atbildi.
68. Tu nevari nerēķināties ar vecāku domām. 69. Diezgan ievērojamas grūtības radās ar jauna dzīvokļa meklēšanu. 70. Laiks ir svarīgs faktors.

TEXT EXERCISES

I. Answer the questions.

1. Where was Soapy? 2. What showed that winter was near at hand? 3. What warning did Soapy receive? 4. Where did Soapy want to spend winter? 5. What did he decide to do to accomplish his desire? 6. What did he halt at? 7. Why did Soapy have confidence in himself? 8. What would he order if he could reach a table in the restaurant unsuspected? 9. Why did his plan fail? 10. How else did Soapy try to attract the policeman's attention? Did he succeed in it? Why? 11. Where did he go now? 12. What did he stop at? 13. What was drifting out of the church windows? 14. What effect did the music make on Soapy? 15. What did he decide to do? 16. Did he get to the Island?

II. Pick out from the text words and phrases bearing on:

- 1) clothing;
- 2) food;
- 3) description of nature.

Use them in your own situations and descriptions.

III. Find Latvian for:

geese honk; sealskin coats; regular denizens; annual call; footman of the mansion; to become cognizant; coming rigour; hibernatorial ambitions; Mediterranean cruises; soporific Southern skies; assured board and bed; congenial company; bluecoats; the essence of things desirable; to declare insolvency; the choicest products of the grape, the silkworm, and the protoplasm; manifestation of revenge; to avert the ignoble fate of the menaced mallard; cunningly displayed wares; law's minions; to loiter over the keys; immaculate thoughts and collars; degraded days; unworthy desires; wrecked faculties; base motives; novel mood; desperate fate.

**Which of these phrases are used in the text in a figurative sense?
Can you explain their meaning?**

IV. Retell the text and then give its summary.

V. Make up and act out the dialogues between:

- 1) Soapy and a waiter at the restaurant;
- 2) Soapy and the policeman at the shopwindow;
- 3) Soapy and the policeman at the church.

VI. Speak on the main character of the story. Do you think the author is fond of his character? Why?

VII. Speak on the mood of the story. Is it sad, full of humour, tragic or ironic?

VIII. Speak on the plot of the story. Do you find it interesting, amusing, instructive?

IX. Was the end of the story unexpected to you? What did you suppose it could be?

X. Say what impression the story has produced on you. Try to motivate your answer.

DISCUSSION EXERCISES

I. Read texts A, B, C.

A. ISAAC NEWTON, 1643–1727, ENGLISH SCIENTIST AND PHILOSOPHER

1. When Newton was busy working out difficult problems, he stayed in his study, forgot about everything else, and allowed nobody to disturb him.

One morning he was so busy working out a difficult problem, that he forgot all about his breakfast. His wife was afraid of disturbing him but, on the other hand, she did not want him to be hungry. She knew it was no use calling him to breakfast. She was also sure that if she took some food to his study, he would let it get cold. Suddenly

she remembered that her husband was very fond of soft boiled eggs, and that he liked to boil one for himself on the small stove in his study. So she went there with a saucepan of water and a fresh egg, put the saucepan on the stove and gave the egg to her husband, reminding him to look at his watch and let the egg boil for three minutes. Then she left the study. When she came back a little later to fetch the saucepan, she saw Newton holding the egg in his hand, while his watch was boiling in the saucepan.

2. Philosophers are often absent-minded. Isaac Newton was a great scientist but he was also a philosopher and, as such, he was often as absent-minded as his colleagues all over the world.

One day a man came to see Newton, but was told by his wife that her husband was busy in his study and that nobody was allowed to disturb him. As it was dinner-time, the visitor sat down in the dining-room to wait for the philosopher. A little later Newton's wife came in and placed a covered dish on the table, telling the visitor that it was her husband's dinner. When she had left, the visitor lifted the cover and saw a boiled chicken in the dish. The chicken looked so good and he was so hungry that before he knew what he was doing, he had eaten the whole bird. Now nothing was left of the chicken in the dish but a lot of small bones. He placed the cover over them and was just going to look for Newton's wife, when she came in again. He apologized for what he had done, but she told him not to worry as she had another boiled chicken ready in the kitchen. While she was fetching it, Newton came into the dining-room, apologized for having kept his visitor waiting, and lifted the cover of the dish. Seeing the bones, he turned to the visitor and said with a smile, "See how absent-minded we philosophers are! I quite forgot I had already had my dinner." Just then his wife came in with another dish, the matter was explained, and everybody had a good laugh.

B. JOSEPH CHAMBERLAIN, 1836–1914, ENGLISH STATESMAN AND TALENTED SPEAKER

Joseph Chamberlain was the guest of honour at a dinner in an important English city. A guest of honour is generally placed between his host and hostess. Chamberlain's host that night was

the Mayor of the important English city. The food was excellent, the conversation lively, so everybody was having a very good time.

Towards the end of the dinner, when coffee was being served, the Mayor thought it was almost time for Mr. Chamberlain's speech. He turned to his guest of honour and said, "Shall we let these people enjoy themselves a little longer, or had we better have your speech now?"

C. CALVIN COOLIDGE, 1872–1933, 30TH PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES

People who are not quite sure of their table manners are wise to imitate the table manners of their hosts during a meal. However it may sometimes lead to an amusing situation, as we shall presently see.

President Coolidge once invited some friends to have a meal with him at the White House. They were not sure of their table manners, so they decided to imitate their host in everything he did during the meal.

All went well until coffee was served. President Coolidge poured a little coffee into his saucer. The guests poured a little coffee into their saucers. Then Coolidge added a lot of cream and sugar to the coffee in his saucer. The guests added a lot of cream and sugar to the coffee in their saucers. Coolidge took his saucer and put it on the floor in front of his cat.

II. Make up questions on the texts and ask your fellow students to answer them.

III. Discuss the problems and situations in the texts.

IV. Read the following fables and answer the questions after them.

1. THE GOOSE WITH THE GOLDEN EGGS

Once upon a time, a greedy man had a goose. This goose laid a golden egg every day. The man was not content with this. He grew greedier than ever. He said to himself: "If I kill the goose,

I shall be able to have all the golden eggs at once. I shall not have to wait for them day by day.”

He killed the goose. When he looked inside the body, he found nothing at all.

Through greediness and discontent he lost the goose and her golden eggs for ever.

Questions:

1. What kind of man is described in this fable? 2. What did he possess? 3. How many eggs did the goose lay every day? 4. What kind of eggs were they? 5. Was the man content with having one egg every day? 6. What did he decide to do? 7. What did he find inside the goose? 8. What was the result of his greediness? 9. Do similar things often happen in everyday life?

2. THE FOX AND THE GRAPES

One wet morning a fox left his house and went out hunting. The weather was very bad – the wind was cold, and heavy clouds covered the sun. All the birds and beasts in the forest hid from the rain and the fox could not find anything to eat. At last he went to the village, but the dogs met him with loud barking. Now the fox was very hungry indeed, and when he saw a grape-vine growing on a wall, he stopped. He looked at the ripe grapes and his mouth watered. “Now I shall have something to eat at last,” he thought. But he began to jump. He jumped and jumped, but he couldn’t get any. At last, tired and very, very hungry, he turned his back on the grape-vine and walked away.

“Oh, well, the grapes are green and sour anyway,” he said to himself.

Questions:

1. Who was hungry? 2. How long had he been looking for food? 3. Where did he come to at last? 4. What did he see high above his head? 5. Could the fox reach the grapes? 6. How many times did he leap? 7. What did he see at last? 8. What did he say when going away?

3. OYSTERS FOR A HORSE

A traveller, drenched and shivering with cold, arrived at a country inn, which he found so full of people that he could not get near the fire. He called the landlord and said to him: "Take a feed of oysters to my horse." The landlord was very surprised and did not know what to do. The traveller repeated his order, and the landlord went to execute it. On hearing this, all the present rushed out to the stable to see the stranger's horse. The traveller however, having now the whole room to himself, sat down comfortably by the fire and warmed himself. When the landlord returned, he said to the traveller: "Your horse does not eat the oysters." – "Never mind," replied the traveller, "put them on the table and I will eat them myself later, but take a feed of oats to my horse."

Questions:

1. Where did a drenched traveller arrive? 2. Why could he not warm himself by the fire? 3. What did he ask the landlord to do? 4. Did the landlord execute his order at once? 5. What did the traveller repeat? 6. Did the landlord fulfil his request this time? 7. What did the people who were in room do? 8. What did the traveller do when he was left alone? 9. What did the landlord say when he returned from the stable? 10. What did the traveller answer?

4. THE EXPENSIVE BREAKFAST

It happened many years ago, when there were still kings in some countries of Europe.

Once a king of a small country was travelling through Holland. He stopped at an inn in a little village to have breakfast. He ordered some boiled eggs, coffee, bread and butter for breakfast.

The king ate two eggs with bread and butter, took a cup of coffee and asked the innkeeper: "How much must I pay for my breakfast?"

The innkeeper answered: "A hundred florins."

The king was very much surprised and said: "What? A hundred florins for a little bread and butter, a cup of coffee and two eggs? It is very expensive! Eggs must be very scarce in your village."

“Oh, no, sir,” answered the innkeeper, “there are many eggs in our village, but kings are very scarce nowadays.”

Questions:

1. Who was travelling through Holland many years ago? 2. Where did the king stop? 3. What for did he stop there? 4. What did he order for breakfast? 5. How much did his breakfast cost? 6. Was the breakfast expensive? 7. Who was very much surprised? 8. What did the king say to the innkeeper? 9. Did the innkeeper agree with him? 10. What did the innkeeper answer the king?

V. What moral can you draw from the fables? Discuss them.

VI. Read the anecdotes and then tell them to your groupmates.

1. Once Mark Twain invited a friend of his to spend the weekend at his place. On Sunday morning they were having soft boiled eggs for breakfast when Twain’s friend said that it was a pleasure to eat such fresh eggs.

“Yes, I get them from the country,” the writer replied, “but speaking of eggs, reminds me of my first lecture tour. One afternoon I came to a small town where I was to lecture in the evening. I wanted to learn whether people knew of my lecture, so I went into a grocer’s, bought something or other, and said to the shop assistant, “I’ve just come to your town. Is there anything interesting going on tonight?” “Well,” the shop assistant replied, “I suppose there will be a lecture because I’ve been selling eggs the whole day.”

2. **Samuel Johnson, 1709–1784, English writer and author of the famous Dictionary of the English Language**

One evening Dr. Johnson was having a friend of his to dinner. The food was excellent and Johnson’s friend, who was very fond of eating well, and thought that good food was the most important thing in life, said when dinner was over, “Don’t you think that an excellent cook is more important in this world than a talented writer?”

Dr. Johnson smiled and answered, “No doubt every dog in the world thinks the same.”

3. What's for supper?

Mother: It is nine o'clock and you are not in bed yet. What will father say when he comes home?

Henry: He'll say: "Supper! Supper! What's for supper?"

4. Once a young Englishman invited his girl to a French restaurant. The menu was written in French, and he did not know that language. As he did not want to look ignorant before the girl, he pointed to some lines in the menu and said to the waiter: "I think, we shall have some of that."

The waiter looked where the man was pointing and said: "I'm sorry, sir, but that's what the band is playing."

VII. Read the dialogues and act them out.

1. At a Restaurant

Tom: Where shall we sit?

Ann: I want to sit near the dance-floor.

Tom: Here is a nice place. And now let's see what they have. What about an omelette and then a nice piece of beefsteak?

Ann: I don't want meat, I'm not hungry. I would rather have some fish.

Tom: Waiter, omelette for two, fish for one and beefsteak for one, please. Shall we have anything to drink?

Ann: Oh, wine is very expensive here, let's have some beer.

Tom: And what shall we have for dessert?

Ann: I'll have a cup of black coffee.

Tom: Make it two, waiter, please. That'll be all, I think.

2. Olga: What have we got for dinner today, Mother?

Mother: Fish soup, cutlets and mashed potatoes, then coffee and sweets.

Olga: I'd like only coffee and sweets. I don't want fish soup, I am not hungry today.

Mother: I know that you are terribly fond of sweets, but you must eat some soup and a cutlet. You are tired and you only think you are not hungry.

Olga (eating): You are right, Mother. I am as hungry as a hunter now. May I have some more soup? Appetite comes with eating.

Mother: Yes, certainly, hunger is the best sauce.

VIII. Make up your own dialogues on the topic.

IX. Read and discuss the following puns.

1. Diner: Have you any wild duck?
Waiter: No, sir, but we can take a tame one and irritate it for you.
wild – savvaļas (par putniem, dzīvniekiem); dusmīgs, nikns
duck – pīle
tame – pieradināts
irritate – kaitināt
2. “Always remember that one swallow does not make a spring.”
“No, but the swallows the size that you take would make one fall all right.”
swallow – bezdelīga; malks
spring – pavasaris
fall – rudens
fall – krist, iznīkt
3. Diner: Waiter, this soup is spoiled.
Waiter: Who told you?
Diner: A little swallow.
4. Waiter: Those are the best eggs we have had for years.
Diner: Well, bring me some eggs you haven't had so long.
5. Wife: I'm going to give you a piece of my mind.
Hubby: Just a small helping, please.
piece – gabals
helping – porcija (ēdiena)
to give sb. a piece of one's mind – atklāti pateikt
6. Customer: Is there any soup on the bill of fare?
Waiter: No, sir, there was, but I wiped it off.
to be on the bill of fare – būt ēdienkartē
wipe – noslaucīt
7. When a woman complained to her butcher that his sausages tasted like meat at one end, but like bread crumbs at the other, he replied: “Madam, in times like these no butcher can make both ends meat.”

meat – gaļa
bread crumbs – maizes drupačas
to make both ends meet – savilkt galus kopā

8. Diner: There's something wrong with these hot dogs.
Waiter: Well, don't tell it to me, I'm only a waiter, not a veterinarian.
dog – suns
hot dogs – (Amer.) cīsiņi
9. Little Marvin found a button in his salad. He remarked: "I suppose it fell off while the salad was dressing."
dress – ģērbties; garnējums
10. "Waiter!"
"Yes, sir."
"What's this?"
"It's bean soup, sir."
"No matter what it's been. What is it now?"
bean – pupa

X. Sayings and proverbs. Read them. Make up dialogues discussing these sayings and proverbs.

1. One meal a day is enough for a lion, and it ought to be for a man. (Anonymous)
2. One should eat to live, not live to eat. (Franklin)
3. The way to a man's heart is through his stomach. (French proverb)
4. If you really want to lose weight, there are only three things you must give up: breakfast, lunch and dinner. (Wright)
5. Glutton: one who digs his grave with his teeth. (French proverb)
6. Appetite comes with eating.
7. Hunger is the best sauce.
8. The rotten apple injures its neighbours.

JUST FOR FUN

I. Read very carefully, some two or three times, these recipes.

SALAD

Cut cubes of boiled meat or ham. Mix with sliced apples and cheese. Add tinned green peas. For dressing take a tea-spoon of mustard mixed with the yellow of one egg and $\frac{3}{4}$ of a tea glass of good oil. Add some salt and sugar. In the bowl dress the salad with parsley and paprikas.

PUDDING

1 tea glass of boiled rice, cubes of boiled meat, 4 tomatoes, 1 onion, 4 paprikas, salt, a glass of sour cream, 150 grams of cheese.

Mix rice, meat, cut onion, tomatoes, cheese and paprikas. Add sour cream and salt. Bake in hot oven 25 minutes.

Now that you have read the recipes, shut the book and answer these questions:

1. What do you need cheese for?
a) for the salad? **b)** for the pudding? **c)** for both the dishes?
2. How much oil do you need for the salad?
a) $\frac{1}{4}$ of a tea glass? **b)** a glassful? **c)** $\frac{3}{4}$ of a glass?
3. What do you need tomatoes for?
a) for the salad? **b)** for the pudding? **c)** for both the dishes?
4. How many paprikas do you need for the pudding?
a) 500 grams? **b)** one paprika? **c)** four paprikas?
5. How long do you bake the pudding?
a) 15 minutes? **b)** half an hour? **c)** 25 minutes?
6. What do you cut cubes of meat for?
a) for the pudding? **b)** for the salad? **c)** for both the dishes?

II. This English poem is easy to remember. Read it and try to tell it to your fellow students.

1. I know an old lady who swallowed a fly,
I don't know why she swallowed a fly.
Perhaps she'll die.

2. I know an old lady who swallowed a spider
That wriggled and jiggled and tickled inside her.
She swallowed the spider to catch the fly,
But I don't know why she swallowed the fly.
Perhaps she'll die.
3. I know an old lady who swallowed a bird.
How absurd to swallow a bird!
She swallowed the bird to catch the spider
That wriggled and jiggled and tickled inside her.
She swallowed the spider to catch the fly,
But I don't know why she swallowed the fly.
Perhaps she'll die.
4. I know an old lady who swallowed a cat.
Fancy that – to swallow a cat!
She swallowed the cat to catch the bird,
She swallowed the bird to catch the spider
That wriggled and jiggled and tickled inside her,
She swallowed the spider to catch the fly,
But I don't know why she swallowed the fly.
Perhaps she'll die.
5. I know an old lady who swallowed a dog.
What a hog – to swallow a dog!
She swallowed the dog to catch the cat,
She swallowed the cat to catch the bird,
She swallowed the bird to catch the spider
That wriggled and jiggled and tickled inside her,
She swallowed the spider to catch the fly,
But I don't know why she swallowed the fly.
Perhaps she'll die.
6. I know an old lady who swallowed a goat.
She just opened her throat and swallowed the goat.
She swallowed the goat to catch the dog,
She swallowed the dog to catch the cat,
She swallowed the cat to catch the bird,
She swallowed the bird to catch the spider
That wriggled and jiggled and tickled inside her,

She swallowed the spider to catch the fly,
But I don't know why she swallowed the fly.
Perhaps she'll die.

7. I know an old lady who swallowed a cow.
I don't know how she swallowed the cow.
She swallowed the cow to catch the goat,
She swallowed the goat to catch the dog,
She swallowed the dog to catch the cat,
She swallowed the cat to catch the bird,
She swallowed the bird to catch the spider
That wriggled and jiggled and tickled inside her,
She swallowed the spider to catch the fly,
But I don't know why she swallowed the fly.
Perhaps she'll die.
8. I know an old lady who swallowed a horse ...
"Is she dead?"
"Of course."

UNIT 4

CHARLES DICKENS (1812–1870)

Dickens was born in Portsmouth, a town on the south coast of England. The little boy was very capable. He learned to read at an early age and read many books in his childhood.

When Charles was nine years old, his family moved to London. Charles' father was a poor clerk who could never make both ends meet. So the life of the family was very hard.

The future writer could not even go to school because at that time his father was put into the Marshalsea prison for debt, and his wife with all the children except Charles went into the prison too. The family lived in the prison until Mr. Dickens could pay his debts.

Therefore those were the most unhappy days in all Charles' life. He lived alone, among strangers, struggling with poverty. At the age of ten he had to start working. The boy worked from early morning till late at night to help his family. He began to work at a blacking factory where he stuck labels on pots of boot-blackening.

When his father left the prison, young Charles was sent to school where he remained three years. When he was fifteen, he had to leave school and start earning his own living again, this time as clerk in a lawyer's office in London. He spent most of his spare time reading in the British Museum, and in this way he educated himself.

In a few years he became a newspaper reporter. In 1836, when he was only twenty-four years old, Dickens published his first book, a collection of sketches of London life. In the same year he began publishing his "Pickwick Papers" which appeared in monthly instalments till November 1837. When the novel was finished, he became the most popular writer of the time.

After "The Pickwick Papers", he wrote the story of a workhouse boy in his novels "Oliver Twist" and "Nicholas Nickleby", in which he showed an English school where the boys were starved, beaten and terrified by their school-master. Then his novels "Dombey and Son", "David Copperfield", "Hard Times", "Little Dorrit" and many others appeared one after another.

Many of Dickens' characters are taken from life. For instance, it is said that Mr. Micawber from "David Copperfield" and Mrs. Nickleby from "Nicholas Nickleby" represent Dickens' own mother and father.

When Dickens was about 50 years old, he began giving readings of his books in public. At these readings he acted all the parts in turn speaking in a high voice for the women. The readings were a great success. People said that if Dickens had chosen, he might have been a fine actor.

In spite of tremendous success of his books, Dickens was not completely happy. Money worries and overwork exhausted the great writer and in 1870 at the age of fifty-eight he died.

The rare combination of a vivid imagination, a keen dramatic sense, and splendid language has placed Dickens among the greatest English writers.

Answer the following questions:

1. When and where was Ch. Dickens born? 2. What do you know of Portsmouth? Can you find it on the map of Britain? 3. What can you tell about his family? 4. What did you learn about Charles' career? 5. How did he start his literary career? 6. Which of his novels have you read? Share your knowledge with your fellowstudents. 7. Why do you think he started giving readings in public? 8. Why is Dickens placed among the greatest English writers?

NICHOLAS NICKLEBY

(an extract)

The school-room Nicholas entered was such a crowded scene, and there were so many objects to attract attention, that at first Nicholas stared about him, without really seeing anything at all. Very soon, however, he saw that the place was a bare and dirty room with two windows, a tenth part of which might be of glass, while the remainder was stopped up with old copy-books and paper. There were several long, old, shaky desks, cut and inked, and damaged in every possible way; a special desk for Squeers, the school-master, and another for his assistant. The walls were so

stained and dirty, that it was impossible to tell whether they had ever been painted or whitewashed.

But the pupils – the young gentlemen! Nicholas saw pale faces, bony figures, children who looked like old men. He could not help seeing how silent and sad the boys seemed to be. Their little faces were darkened with suffering; their beauty was gone; there was no light in their eyes and they seemed to lack the spirit to move about. All the boys were dressed in dirty rags which fully harmonized with the dirt and disorder that surrounded the children.

And yet this scene, painful as it was, had its grotesque features. Mrs. Squeers stood at one of the desks on which a basin of brimstone and treacle was placed. She gave a large portion of this delicious mixture to each boy in turn, using for the purpose a very large wooden spoon which widened every young gentleman's mouth considerably. The boys were all obliged, under heavy corporal punishment, to take in the whole of the spoon at a gasp.

"Nickleby," said Mrs. Squeers sharply, noticing the surprised expression on Nicholas's face, "if you want to be a teacher here, you must understand at once that we don't want any foolery about the boys. They have the brimstone and the treacle, partly because if they hadn't something or other in the way of medicine they'd always be ill and giving us a world of trouble, and partly because it spoils their appetites and makes their breakfast and dinner cheaper. So it does them good and us at the same time, and that's fair enough, I'm sure."

When Mrs. Squeers was finishing the procedure, choking the last boy in her hurry, Mr. Squeers came in and the boys took their places and their books. Mr. Squeers looked very profound, as if he had a perfect understanding of what was inside all the books, and could say every word of their contents by heart if he only chose to take the trouble.

The school-master called up the first class. Obedient to this command a number of boys lined up in front of Mr. Squeers' desk, half a dozen scarecrows, out at knees and elbows, one of whom placed a torn and filthy book beneath his learned eye.

"This is the first class in English spelling and philosophy, Nickleby," said Squeers, motioning to Nicholas to stand beside

him. "We'll make up a Latin one, and hand that over to you. Now then, where's the first boy?"

"Please, Sir, he's cleaning the back parlour window," said the head of the philosophical class.

"So he is, to be sure," rejoined Squeers. "We go upon the practical way of teaching, Nickleby; the regular education system. C-l-e-a-n, clean, verb active, to make bright. W-i-n, win, d-e-r, der, winder, an opening in the wall. When the boy knows this out of the book, he goes and does it. It's just the same principle as the use of the globes. Where's the second boy?"

"Please, Sir, he's weeding the garden," replied a small voice.

"To be sure," said Squeers. "So he is. B-o-t, bot, t-i-n, bottin, n-e-y, bottinney, noun substantive, a knowledge of plants. When he has learned that bottinney means a knowledge of plants, he goes and knows them. That's our system Nickleby; what do you think of it?"

"It's a very useful one, at any rate," answered Nicholas.

"I believe you," rejoined Squeers. "Third boy, what's a horse?"

"A beast, Sir," replied the boy.

"So it is," said Squeers. "Ain't it, Nickleby?"

"I believe there is no doubt of that, Sir," answered Nicholas.

"Of course there isn't," said Squeers. "A horse is a quadruped, and quadruped's Latin for beast, as everybody that's gone through the grammar knows, or else where's the use of having grammars at all?"

"Where, indeed!" said Nicholas.

"As you're perfect in that," continued Squeers, turning to the boy, "go and look after my horse, and rub him down well, or I'll rub you down. The rest of the class go and draw water up, till somebody tells you to leave off, for it's washing day tomorrow."

So saying, he dismissed the first class to their experiments in practical philosophy, and eyed Nicholas with a look half cunning and half doubtful, as if he were not altogether certain what he might think of him by this time.

"That's the way we do it, Nickleby," he said after a pause. Nicholas shrugged his shoulders and said he saw it was.

"And a very good way it is, too," said Squeers. "Now, just take these fourteen little boys of the second class and hear some

reading, because, you know, you must begin to be useful and idling about here won't do."

Mr. Squeers said this, as if it had suddenly occurred to him, either that he must not say too much to his assistant, or that his assistant did not say enough to him in praise of the school. The children were arranged in a semi-circle round the new master, and he was soon listening to their dull, hesitating reading of those stories which are to be found in old spelling books.

In this exciting occupation, the morning dragged heavily on. At one o'clock, the boys sat down in the kitchen to have some salt beef. After this there was another hour of shivering with cold in the school-room and then lessons began again.

PHRASES

1. to attract attention
2. he couldn't help seeing
3. in turn
4. to take in
5. the whole of the spoon
6. at a gasp
7. a world of trouble
8. to do good (harm)
9. to line up
10. at any rate
11. to go through
12. there is no doubt of that
13. to rub down
14. to shrug one's shoulders
15. it occurred to me
16. to hand something over to somebody
17. to call up
18. to look after
19. to take the trouble to do sth.
20. to say sth. in praise of sth.

VOCABULARY ITEMS

- 1. paint** n – 1. colouring matter used to give colour to a surface.
Give the doors two coats of paint.
2. material used to colour the face.
3. (pl) collection of tubes or cakes of colouring materials.

paint-box n

paint-brush n

- paint** v – 1. coat with paint: paint a door; paint the gate green.
2. make a picture (of) with paint: paint flowers / a landscape;
paint in oils / in water-colours.
3. describe vividly in words.

not so balck as one is painted – not so bad as one is represented to be.

painter n – 1. person who paints pictures; artist.

2. workman who paints woodwork, walls, buildings, ships, etc.

painting n – 1. using paint; occupation of a painter.

2. painted picture.

- 2. to go** v – 1. (from/to) move, pass, from one point to another and away from the speaker. Shall we go there by train or by plane? He has gone to China.
2. be placed. Where do you want your piano go? My clothes won't go into this small suitcase.
3. become: go blind / mad.
4. be moving, working; operate. The clock doesn't go. This machine goes by electricity.
5. (on, in) be spent on (of money). How much of your money goes on food and clothes / in rent?

Phrases:

go too far – go beyond acceptable limits. You must apologize at once – you've gone too far.

go to great lengths / trouble / pains (to do sth.) – to take care to do sth. well. He went to great trouble to make his guests comfortable.

go on a journey / trip / outing – make a journey / take a trip / have an outing.

go out of fashion / out of use

go to sea – become a sailor.

go to sb. – pass into sb's possession. Who did the property go to when the old man died?

go about – move from place to place; pass from person to person.
I don't go about much anymore. A story is going about that ...

go after sb. / sth. – try to win or obtain. He's gone after a job in the city.

go against sb. / sth. – oppose; be contrary to. Don't go against your father. It goes against my principles.

go at sb. / sth. – rush at; attack. They went at each other furiously.

go back on / upon – fail to keep. He is not the sort of man who would go back on his word.

go before sth. – precede. Pride goes before a fall.

go beyond sth. – exceed. You've gone beyond your instructions.

go by – pass. Time went by slowly.

go down – (of ship) sink; (of sun) set; (of food) be swallowed; (of sea, wind) become calm; (of prices) go lower.

go for sb. – a) go to fetch. Shall I go for a doctor?
b) attack. The dog went for a postman as soon as he opened the garden gate.

go in (of the sun; moon) – be obscured by clouds. The sun went in and it grew rather cold.

go in for sth. – take, enter; have an interest in. He goes in for golf.

go into details – investigate carefully.

go off – a) explode. The gun went off by accident.
b) lose good quality. Meat and fish go off quickly in hot weather.
c) become unconscious. She went off into a faint.

go on the dole / social security – obtain payment under various government schemes.

go on with sth. / doing sth. – continue. Go on trying!

go out – a) attend social functions. She still goes out a great deal, even at seventy-five.
b) be extinguished. The fire has gone out.
c) become unfashionable. Has the fashion for boots gone out?

go through sth. – a) discuss in details. Let's go through the arguments again.

b) undergo, suffer: go through hardships.

go together – a) be a normal accompaniment. Crime and poverty often go together.

b) match. Do my green shirt and my blue jeans go together?

go up – rise. Temperature is going up.

go with sb. / sth.

Synonyms:

I. to go, to walk, to step, to stride.

To go. *To go* is the general term for to move or to be in motion, and may be used for travelling by any means.

E.g. It's getting on for 11 o'clock. I must go now. This road goes to High Town. This book does not go into my bag.

To walk. To go on foot. (n walk; walker)

E.g. Shall we walk or go by bus? My feet have got sore from all that walking.

Collocations: to go for a walk; to have / take a walk; to walk in one's sleep; a sleep walker; a road walk; to go on foot; a going concern.

To step. To move one foot, or one foot after the other. To walk, esp. for a few steps = paces. (n step)

E.g. He stepped out into the road and was knocked down by a car. Step this way, please. Step in and make yourself at home.

Collocations: to keep / change step; to make a false step (fig.); a step in the right direction (fig.); to be in / out of step (fig.); to step out; footsteps.

To stride. To walk with big steps.

E.g. With one stride he was across the brook.

Collocations: to take sth. in one stride (colloq.); with giant strides; making giant strides (fig.).

II. to go, to drive, to travel, to ride.

To go. The general term. It is used either without or with indication of the means of conveyance.

E.g. Will you go by steamer or by plane? Where are you going? We were going fast when we noticed a road block in front of us.

To drive. To act as the driver of a car (or train). (n a drive)

E.g. She drove her Jaguar into the garage. If you do not drive carefully, you may get into trouble.

Collocations: to drive a car / lorry / van / coach / train / horse / tram; to go for a drive, to have / take a drive; to drive carelessly / carefully; a driving-licence; a driving-instructor.

To ride. To be carried along in any kind of (public) conveyance (without being the driver); to travel on a bike. (n a ride)

E.g. When I saw him, he was riding his bicycle. Do you wish to walk or to ride? Did you enjoy your ride in his new car?

Collocations: to ride a bicycle / motorcycle; to ride in a car / train / bus / tram etc.

To travel. To move from one place to another; to move or go in some specified manner, at some specified speed etc.

E.g. We shall travel from Edinburg to Bair Athole by coach or by train. His car was travelling at 70 miles per hour when he lost control of it.

Collocations: to travel by boat / rail etc.; to travel slowly / fast / first class; to travel in great style.

Antonyms: *to come, to approach, to arrive.*

3. eye n – 1. organ of sight. We see with our eyes. He opened / closed his eyes. He is blind in one eye.

Phrases:

in the eyes of sb.; in my / his, etc. eyes – in the judgement of.

You're only a child in his eyes.

under / before one's very eyes – a) in one's presence, in front of one.

b) with no attempt at concealment.

up to the eyes in (work, etc.) – deeply engaged in.

close one's eyes to – refuse to see or take notice of.

give sb. a black eye; black sb's eye – give him a blow so that there is a discoloured bruise round the eye.

have an eye for – be a good judge of, have a proper sense of. He has a good eye for beauty / the picturesque.

keep an eye on – (lit, fig) keep a watch on.

make eyes at – look amorously at.

set / clap eyes on – see. I hope I shall never set eyes on her again.

never take one's eyes off – never stop watching.

2. thing like an eye: the eye of a needle; a hook and eye; the eye of a potato.

3. (compounds, etc.).

eye-ball n – the eye within the lids and socket.

eye-brow n – arch of hair above the eye.

raise one's eyebrows – express surprise, doubt, etc.

eye-glasses n – pair of lenses in a frame.

eye-lash n – hair, row of hairs, on the edge of the eyelid.

eye-lid n – upper or lower covering of the eye.

eye-piece n – lens at the end of a telescope or microscope, to which the eye is applied.

eye-shadow n – cosmetic applied to the eyelids.

eye-sight n – power, faculty, of seeing: to have good / poor eyesight.

eye-witness n – person who can bear witness from what he has himself seen: an eye-witness account of a crime.

-eyed suff (in compounds): a blue-eyed girl; a one-eyed man.

to eye v – observe, watch. He eyed me with suspicion. They were ey(e)ing us jealously.

Synonyms: *to gaze, to look, to stare, to eye.*

To look (at sth., sb.) is the general word in this group of synonyms and may be used instead of any of the verbs of the group.

E.g. The teacher looked at the child with interest.

To gaze (at, on, upon sth., sb.) is to look long and steadily usually with wonder, curiosity or admiration.

E.g. Andrew Manson sat gazing with fixed intensity through the window upon the mountains which rose on either side of the single railway track.

To stare (at sth., sb.) is to look long and steadily at sth. or sb.

E.g. The children stared at the new pupil who stood in front of the class.

To eye (sth., sb.) is to watch carefully with suspicion or curiosity.

E.g. The policeman eyed George with suspicion when the latter hid in the doorway of the house.

4. **to lack** v – 1. *lack (in)* – be without; not have; have less than enough of: lack wisdom. I lack words with which to express my thanks. What I lack in experience I make up in curiosity.

be lacking in sth. – not have enough of it. He's lacking in courage.

2. *be lacking* – be in short supply, not be available. Money was lacking for the plan.

3. *lack for* – (formal) need. They lacked for nothing.

lack n – want, need, shortage. The plants died for lack of water.

Synonyms: *to want, to lack, to be absent, to be missing.*

To want. To be short of something or to be without something.
(n want)

E.g. She wants three years for her pension.

Collocations: to be in want of; to want for.

To lack. Similar to want it suggests “to be in short supply of something or not to have”. (n lack)

E.g. The only thing he lacks is patience. They are lacking in practice. The house lacks central heating.

Collocations: to be lacking in sth.; to lack sth.; a lack of sth.; for lack of sth.; no lack of.

To be absent. Chiefly used of persons, not to be present.
(n absence)

E.g. She was absent from school because she was ill. How long has the manager been absent?

To be missing. Used of persons and things; what is lacking to make something complete, what one does not find in its place.

E.g. After the catastrophe fifty miners were missing. There are some pages missing in the dictionary.

5. feature n – 1. one of the named parts of the face. Her eyes are her best feature.

2. (pl) the face as a whole: a man of handsome features.

3. characteristic or striking part: the geographical features of a district; unusual features in a political programme.

4. (often attrib) prominent article or subject in a newspaper; full-length film in a cinema programme, etc.: a newspaper that makes a feature of sport; a two-feature programme.

to feature v – be a feature, a feature of; have a prominent part for: a film that features a new French actress.

featureless adj – uninteresting; with no obvious features.

- 6. to trouble** v – 1. cause worry, discomfort, anxiety or inconvenience to: be troubled by bad news; troubled with a nasty cough.
 2. *trouble sb. to do sth.*; *trouble sb. for sth.* – put sb. to the inconvenience of doing sth. May I trouble you to pass the salt, please. I must trouble you to remember your manners.
 3. bother or inconvenience oneself. Don't trouble to meet me at the station. Why should I trouble to explain?
 4. agitate; disturb: a troubled expression; troubled looks.
- trouble** n – 1. worry; anxiety, discomfort; unhappiness; difficulty. Her heart was full of trouble. She's always making trouble for her friends. He has been through much trouble / has had many troubles.

Phrases:

in trouble – suffering, misfortune, anxiety because one has done wrong.

ask / look for trouble – behave in such a way that trouble is likely. It's asking for trouble to experiment with drugs.

get into trouble – do sth. that will bring unhappiness, punishment.

get sb. into trouble – cause sb. to be in trouble.

2. sb. or sth. that causes trouble. I don't want to be any trouble to you. I find it a great trouble to get up at 6 a.m.

3. care; attention; (extra) work; inconvenience. Did the work give you much trouble? I don't like putting you to so much trouble.

4. illness: liver trouble; mental trouble; children's troubles.

troublesome adj – causing trouble: a troublesome child / headache / problem.

Synonyms: *to trouble, to worry, to bother.*

To trouble most commonly denotes that a person is put to some inconvenience or that the normal state of things is disturbed.

E.g. We mustn't trouble him about it.

To worry denotes the fact that a person is in uneasy state of mind about something.

Cf. My wound troubles me (= causes pain). My wound worries me (= gives no peace of mind).

E.g. Don't worry about it. Everything will be all right.

To bother refers to the act of interrupting or disturbing someone, or preventing him from continuing to do what he is doing. *Bother* sometimes implies bewilderment or worry and anxiety.

E.g. Tell children to stop bothering their father.

- 7. heart** n – 1. that part of the body which pumps blood through the system. When a man's heart stops beating, he dies. He had a heart attack.
2. centre of the emotions, esp. love: a man with a kind heart; a kind-hearted man.

Phrases:

sb. after one's own heart – of the sort one very much likes or approves of.

at heart – deep down; basically.

have sth. at heart – be deeply interested in it.

from (the bottom of) one's heart – sincerely.

in one's heart of hearts – in one's inmost feelings.

to one's heart's content – as much as, for as long as, etc. one wishes.

with all one's heart – completely and willingly. I love you with all my heart.

heart and soul – completely. I'm yours heart and soul.

break a person's heart – make him very sad.

cry one's heart out – pine or brood over sth., esp. in secret.

(get / learn / know sth.) by heart – from memory.

have the heart to – be hard-hearted or unsympathetic enough to.

How can you have the heart to drown the kittens?

have one's heart in sth. – be interested in it and fond of it.

have one's heart in one's boots – be greatly discouraged, feel hopeless.

have one's heart in one's mouth – be badly frightened.

have one's heart in the right place – have true or kind feelings.

have one's heart set on sth. – desire greatly.

lose heart – be discouraged.

lose one's heart to sb. / sth. – become very fond of; fall in love with.

take sth. to heart – be much affected by it; grieve over it.

wear one's heart on / upon one's sleeve – show one's feelings quite openly.

3. central part: in the heart of the forest; the heart of the matter; a cabbage with a good solid heart.

heartache n

heartbeat n

heart-break n

heartbreaking adj

heartbroken adj

heart-disease n – disease of the heart.

heart-failure n – failure of the heart to function.

heart-rending adj – causing deep grief.

heartstrings n pl – deepest feelings of love: play upon sb's heartstrings, touch his feelings.

hearted adj – (in compounds): hard-hearted; sad-hearted; faint-hearted, lacking in courage.

heartless adj – unkind; without pity.

heartlessly adv

heartlessness n

to hearten v – give courage to; cheer: heartening news.

heartily adv – 1. with goodwill, courage or appetite: set to work heartily; eat heartily.

2. very: heartily glad that ...

hearty adj – 1. (of feelings) sincere: give sb. a hearty welcome.

2. strong; in good health: still hale and hearty at eighty-five.

3. big: a hearty meal / appetite.

8. **tear** n – drop of salty water coming from the eye. Her eyes filled with tears. The sad story moved us to tears.

tear-drop n

tear-gas n – tear-gas bombs.

tearful adj – crying; wet with tears: a tearful face; tearful looks.

tearfully adv

tearless adj – without tears, not weeping. The mother stared at her dead baby in tearless grief.

to tear v – 1. pull sharply apart or to pieces; damage, by pulling sharply: tear a sheet of paper in two / tear it to pieces / to bits; tear sth. up.

2. cause (sth.) to be out of place (down, off, away, etc.) by pulling sharply: tear a page out of a book / a notice down from a notice-board / a leaf from a calendar.

tear oneself away (from) – leave; stop doing sth. She could scarcely tear herself away from the scene. He could not tear himself away from his book.

3. destroy the peace of: a country torn by civil war; a heart torn by grief.

torn between – painfully distracted by having to choose between.

4. become torn. This material tears easily.

5. go in excitement or at great speed. The children tore out of the school gates / were tearing about in the playground. He tore down the hill.

tear n – torn place in sth., e.g. cloth, paper.

9. to educate v – 1. give intellectual and moral training to; train. The boy had to educate himself in the evening after finishing his work. I was educated for the law. You should educate your children to behave well.

educator n – person who educates.

education n – 1. systematic training and instruction. No country can afford to neglect education. Is education free and compulsory in your country?

2. knowledge and abilities, development of character and mental powers, resulting from such training.

educational adj – of, connected with, education: educational work; an educational magazine.

educationist, educationalist n – expert in education.

Synonyms: *to bring up, to rear, to educate, to breed, to train.*

To bring up. To care for children during their childhood. The general term for what parents do to their children. (n upbringing)

E.g. They have brought their children up very well.

Collocations: well / badly brought up; a strict upbringing.

To rear is used in the sense of “to bring up children”, but a literary rather than a colloquial term. In the sense of “to breed or raise animals (or crops)”, however, it is a term of everyday language.

E.g. He was reared amidst squalor and poverty. They rear chicken for a living.

To educate is develop, bring out the intellectual and moral powers of a person by instructions, teaching or experience. (n education)

E.g. It is the task of teachers to educate children.

Collocations: to be educated at school / university etc. an educated person.

To breed. 1) to raise livestock. *Breed* indicates the process of reproduction and usually improvement thereby. Whereas *rear* is simply to look after animals and to bring to satisfactory maturity. Breeding is done by a skilled breeder, whereas a mere cattleman rears the cattle.

2) to cultivate someone's manners in accordance with tradition; sometimes in the sense of to prepare for some career by education and instruction. *Well-bred*, however, is not necessarily *well-educated*, it need have little to do with intellect. The opposite of *well-bred* would be *crude*. (n breed)

E.g. Some farmers specialize in cattle breeding. England still breeds men to fight for her. He's a man of fine breeding.

Collocations: to breed sheep / dogs etc.; selective breeding (of cattle); a well-bred / ill-bred man; bad breeding (bad manners); a man of (good) breeding.

To train. To bring a person or animal to some desired level of efficiency, to further develop powers that already exist. (n training)

E.g. He is a trained teacher of languages.

Collocations: to train soldiers / a child to do sth. / an athlete or sportsman; to train a dog (for certain performances, but also in general, i.e. to behave as you want it to); to train for some competition; fully / well-trained; a training college / school / ship; a trained teacher / athlete / boxer / nurse.

- 10. draw** n – 1. the act of drawing: the draw for the fourth round of the tennis tournament. When does the draw take place. The game ended in a draw, neither side won.
2. sb. or sth. that attracts attention. The new play is a great draw.

to draw v – 1. move by pulling: to draw a boat (up) out of the water / on to the beach; to draw one's chair up to the table; to draw sb. aside; to draw on / off one's socks / gloves / tights; to draw a curtain across a window; to draw down the blinds.

2. move by pulling after or behind: a train drawn by two locomotives; tractor-drawn ploughs.

3. *draw (out)*; *draw (from / out of)* – take or get out by pulling; extract: to draw a cork; to draw nails from a plank; to have a tooth drawn.

4. *draw (from / out of)* – obtain from a source: to draw water from a well; to draw money from the bank / from one's account; to draw inspiration from nature.

draw tears / applause, etc. – be the cause of. Her singing drew long applause.

5. *draw (to)* – attract. Street accidents always draw crowds. The film drew large audiences.

6. take in: to draw a deep breath.

7. move; come. Christmas is drawing near. The day drew to its close.

8. make with a pen, pencil, chalk, etc.: to draw a straight line / a circle; to draw a picture / plan / diagram.

describe in words. The characters in Jane Austen's novels are well drawn.

draw a parallel / comparison / analogy (between)

9. end (a game, etc.) without either winning or losing: to draw a football or cricket match.

Phrases:

draw in – (of a day) 1. reach its end.

2. become shorter. The days begin to draw in after midsummer.

draw on – (of a period of time) approach. Night drew on.

draw on sth. / sb. – take or use as a source. We mustn't draw on our savings. You may draw on me for any sum up to £ 500.

draw out – (of a day) become longer. Christmas passed and the days began to draw out.

draw sth. out – stretch; cause to become longer. He heated the metal and drew it out into a long wire. He has drawn out the subject into three volumes.

draw sb. out – cause, persuade (a person) to talk, show his feelings etc.

draw (sth. / sb.) up – 1. (of a vehicle) (cause to) come to a stop.
The taxi drew up in front of the station.

2. prepare; compose: to draw up a contract.

drawback n – sth. which lessens one's satisfaction, or makes progress less easy, disadvantage (to).

drawer n – box-like container (with a handle or handles) which slides in and out of piece of furniture, etc.

chest of drawers – piece of furniture consisting of a set of drawers.

drawing n – the art of representing objects, scenes, etc. by lines, with a pencil.

Synonyms:

I. *to paint, to draw.*

To draw means to make lines, pictures, etc. with pencil or pen.
E.g. The boy drew geometrical figures. The plan was drawn by an experienced architect.

To paint means to portray with paints.

E.g. Young Jolyon painted pictures. He painted beautiful landscapes.

II. *to draw, to pull, to drag.*

To draw, to pull, to drag come into comparison when they mean “to cause a person or thing to move from one place or position to another”.

To draw means to cause an object to move from one position to another by the exertion of force, it is opposed *to push*; *to draw* is also to pull towards oneself by a movement of hand or arm.

E.g. To draw a wagon, a train, a load, to draw water from a well.

To drag is to draw or pull roughly, or along, usually over the ground or a surface, especially something heavy, for which effort is required; to pull with force; it also means to draw slowly and with difficulty. *Drag* may be used figuratively. The difference between *draw* and *drag* is that *to draw* is the general word for traction of any sort, but *to drag* is to draw with toil, difficulty, or violence, especially against active or passive resistance; with

force to overcome friction between the object drawn and the surface on which it rests.

E.g. To drag one's feet; to drag a net in fishing; to drag a heavy piece of furniture across a room.

To pull is to cause to move towards one, to cause to come nearer to the object from the direction from which force is exerted, to remove, extract by pulling; to cause to move from the position occupied. *Pull* is often accompanied by an adverb or adverbial phrase to indicate the direction.

E.g. To pull out a cork; to pull a cart; to pull out a tooth; to pull a person out of bed; to pull by the sleeve. He complains that another boy pulled his ear. Horses *pull* very long sometimes before they can *draw* a heavily laden cart uphill.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Consult a dictionary and practise the pronunciation of the following words:

shaby, inked, rags, harmonize, grotesque, brimstone, treacle, delicious, corporal punishment, gasp, foolery, appetite, procedure, choke, profound, philosophy, parlour, philosophical, principle, weeding, substantive, botany, quadruped, cunning, idling, semi-circle.

II. Explain the polysemy of the words and phrases in italics and then translate the sentences.

A. 1. I offered you *a draw*. 2. His appearance will be *the draw* of the evening. 3. The tug *was drawing* six barges after it. 4. The train *was drawn* by two engines. 5. He *drew* the screen back into its former place in front of the picture. 6. The girl *drew* him aside and whispered: "I want to have a word with you." 7. The carriage *was drawn* by a pair of greys. 8. She *drew* the curtains down carefully lest she should wake the patient. 9. Though he sat there, blushing and humble, she felt *drawn* to him. 10. He *drew* out his purse: there was not much money in it. 11. Stephen always liked *to draw*. 12. They *drew* near the fire which their father had made up as well as he could. 13. An oil painting caught and held him. There was

beauty, and it *drew* him irresistably. 14. The day *was drawing* to an end. 15. The runner stopped *to draw* breath. 16. They talked non-stop, without even *drawing* breath. 17. This chimney *draws* well. 18. Grief *drew* them closer. 19. His words *drew* applause from the audience.

B. 1. It happened under his very *eyes*. 2. I never set *eyes* on him before. 3. He could measure everything by *eye*. 4. The steppe stretched as far as the *eye* could see. 5. When he saw Helen enter the hall he rubbed his *eyes* in disbelief. 6. I ran my *eye* quickly over your article. 7. In the *eyes* of the law he was not guilty. 8. In his *eyes* she is still a child. 9. I've got my *eye* on that violin. 10. He's got a good *eye* for a horse. 11. I'll keep my *eye* on the children for you. 12. One can see with half an *eye* he's a foreigner. 13. I'm up to my *eyes* in work. 14. I opened his *eyes* to the truth. 15. I tried to catch the *eye* of the auctioneer. 16. He caught my *eye* and gave me a wink. 17. He is very much in the public *eye* these days. 18. The girl *eyed* him with curiosity.

C. 1. He *tore* the paper into pieces. 2. The page is slightly *torn*. 3. She *tore* herself from his arms. 4. The girl *tore* her dress on the nail that was sticking out of the chair. 5. He *was torn* by conflicting emotions. 6. The child *was torn* between them. 7. This paper *tears* easily. 8. Mrs. Smith opened the present carefully, trying not to *tear* the wrapping paper. 9. *I've torn* a hole in my trousers climbing over that fence. 10. How did you get that *tear* in your jacket. 11. I've noticed a small *tear* near the corner of the painting. 12. His dog came *tearing* across the field towards me.

D. 1. Most of us were in *tears* by the time he'd finished his story. 2. My little girl came home in *tears*. "What's wrong darling?" I asked. 3. The family had a *tearful* reunion at the airport. 4. He stood silently, *tears* rolling down his cheeks, while the music played. 5. Kate tried to console the *tearful* child. 6. She showed us the letter with *tears* running down her cheeks. 7. He managed to get back inside the house before bursting into *tears*. 8. Her hands were shaking. She was on the verge of *tears* but Paul didn't realise it. 9. The lesson was going very badly and the teacher was close to *tears*. 10. Laura burst into *tears* and ran out of the room. 11. I banged my hand

down on the table, fighting back *tears* of rage and frustration. 12. His quiet words brought *tears* to my eyes. 13. He nagged and complained, and reduced Helen to *tears*. 14. She was often reduced to *tears* by the sight of children begging. 15. The old song always brought *tears* to Nick's eyes.

E. 1. My wound *troubles* me very much. 2. May I *trouble* you for a glass of water? 3. I'll *trouble* you to mind your own business. 4. He told me all his *troubles*. 5. What a *trouble* you are! 6. Their son is a great *trouble* to them. 7. He has money *troubles*. 8. I am putting you to a lot of *trouble*. 9. Every time there's *trouble* I have to go along and sort it out. 10. We have had a lot of *trouble* with the car this year. 11. The *trouble* with this dish is that it takes so long to make. 12. Because I'm a priest, people often come to me with their *troubles*, looking for advice. 13. It's clear from these figures that the company is in *trouble*. 14. I took out a loan but got into *trouble* when I lost my job. 15. The infection can be particularly *troublesome* if it affects the lungs and throat. 16. Don't give him another drink, or he'll start causing *trouble*. 17. The *troublesome* issue of the border dispute is sure to remain a problem. 18. The *trouble* is that no one seems to know what is happening.

F. 1. The public need to be *educated* about healthy eating. 2. What we are trying to do is *to educate* young people to be responsible citizens. 3. Jobs in *education* are not usually highly paid. 4. People working in *education* are becoming angry with government's refusal to consult them about changes. 5. Most *educators* agree that intimidating kids is not the best way to encourage them to learn. 6. Liz makes *educational* programmes for children's television.

G. 1. I've been on the *go* all day. 2. I think we can make a *go* of it. 3. Long shirts are all the *go* now. 4. I often *go* to the theatre. 5. The bus *goes* to that village twice a day. 6. We *went* round the shops for a while till it was time for the train. 7. The road *goes* South. 8. We usually *go* to the country on Sunday. 9. Last year we *went* around in France quite a lot. 10. He *was going* at 60 m.p.h. 11. *They've* just *gone* five minutes ago. 12. They *went* to England by sea. 13. *They've gone* South for their holiday. 14. The train *goes* from platform three. 15. *Let's go* for a walk. 16. *She's gone* to visit

her aunt. 17. *I'm going* to change my job. 18. *It's going* to rain. 19. *She's gone* shopping. 20. How did the exam *go*? 21. I hope all *is going* well with you. 22. If I'm not there, everything *goes* wrong. 23. It will *go* hard with him. 24. The estate *went* to his brother. 25. The house *went* for 40000 lats. 26. When I turned round, he *was gone*. 27. The money *is all gone*. 28. *Is your watch going?* 29. The battery *has gone*. 30. *Are there any tickets going* for tonight's concert? 31. We missed supper so we had to *go* hungry. 32. I can't remember how this argument *went*. 33. What he says *goes*. 34. Where do you want the piano *to go*?

H. 1. I could feel my *heart* beating. 2. He had a *heart* attack a week ago. 3. He tried to get to the *heart* of the matter. 4. He is a man after my own *heart*. 5. The colour came up in her cheeks, released from a *heart* beating too fast now. 6. His generous *heart* warmed to her at the prospect of misfortune. 7. Drink this, Nicky: it will give you the *heart* you lack, for an hour or so.

I. 1. He *lacks* a sense of humour. 2. The plants died for *lack* of water. 3. There's no *lack* of money in their family. 4. I'm getting fat from *lack* of exercise. 5. He is bored for *lack* of company. 6. He *lacked* will power to give up smoking. 7. We *lacked* time to finish the book.

J. 1. The school's most notable *feature* was its air of calm. 2. A *feature* common to all these buildings is a spacious entrance hall. 3. Patriotism was a prominent *feature* in his election campaign. 4. Information on employment is a central *feature* of this training course. 5. The paper *features* two promising young actresses. 6. The paper made a special *feature* of the Queen's visit. 7. The landing of the cosmonauts *was featured* on the front page. 8. The report of the match *was featured* in all the papers.

K. 1. Constable sometimes used a palette knife to apply the *paint* instead of a brush. 2. They *painted* the door white. 3. Martin stared at what seemed to be a careless daub of *paint*, then stepped away. 4. Turner excelled in *painting* marine subjects. 5. It was a strange situation, and very different from any romantic picture which his fancy might *have painted*.

III. Give your own sentences or situations with the following word combinations and translate the combinations into Latvian. Is it always possible to give a word for word translation?

1. to have a tooth drawn; to draw money from the bank; to draw one's salary; to draw inspiration from nature; to draw a deep breath; to draw a character in a novel; to draw a parallel; to draw a comparison; to draw analogy.

2. to be up to the eyes in work; to close one's eyes to; to give sb. a black eye; to have an eye for; to keep an eye on; to make eyes at; to set eyes on; never take one's eyes off; to raise one's eyebrows; to measure sth. by eye; to rub one's eyes in disbelief; to run one's eyes over sth.; to have a good eye for; to see with half an eye; to catch the eye of sb.; to have good / poor eyesight.

3. to be moved to tears; to burst into tears.

4. to tear sth. to pieces / bits; to tear one's hair; to tear sth. open; to tear a page out of a book; to tear a notice down from a notice-board; to tear a leaf from a calendar; to tear down the hill.

5. to trouble sb. to do sth.; to trouble sb. for sth.; heart full of trouble; to make trouble for sb.; to ask for trouble; to look for trouble; to get into trouble; to get sb. into trouble; to be a great trouble; to put sb. to trouble; to have mental trouble; a troublesome child; a troublesome affair; in these troubled times; a troublesome problem.

6. to educate oneself; to be educated for law; to educate the children; free education; compulsory education; educational work; educational magazine.

7. to go by train / plane / bus; to go too far; to go to great lengths to do sth.; to go to great trouble to do sth.; to go on a trip; to go for a walk; to go for a swim; to go out of fashion; to go out of use; to go to war; to go to church; to go to hospital; to go to market; to go to school / college / university; to go to sea; to go on the stage; to go to sb.; to go broke; to go badly / well; to go easy on sb. / sth.

8. to have a generous heart; to have a heart attack; a kindhearted man; sb. after one's own heart; to have sth. at heart; from the bottom of one's heart; in one's heart of hearts; to talk to one's heart's content;

with all one's heart; heart and soul; to break a person's heart; to cry one's heart out; to learn sth. by heart; to have the heart to; to have one's heart in sth.; to have one's heart in one's boots; to have one's heart in one's mouth; to have one's heart in the right place; to have one's heart set on sth.; to lose heart; to lose one's heart to sb. / sth.; to take sth. to heart; to wear one's heart on one's sleeve; the heart of the matter.

9. to lack wisdom; to lack sense of humour; to be lacking in sth.; lack of company; lack of water; lack of money.

10. a prominent feature; a specific feature; a common feature; the geographical features of the district; a man of handsome features; a feature film.

11. to paint a landscape; to paint a seascape; to paint in oils; to paint in watercolours; not so black as one is painted.

IV. Paraphrase the italicized words and phrases by using suitable active vocabulary.

1. draw

1. The days were *becoming shorter* and my daily walk through the park and weekly visit to the cinema had to be abandoned. 2. He put his hand in his pocket and *took* out a ring. 3. He *took* the gun *from* his pocket and pointed it at me. 4. I would like *to take* 20 lats from my account. 5. He *took* off his gloves. 6. The politician *lengthened* his speech to almost two hours. 7. Mary is very quiet; try to *encourage* her at the party. 8. The taxi *came to a stop* before a house in Green Street. 9. The general *has written* a plan to defeat the enemy. 10. Has your lawyer *prepared* the contract yet?

2. tear

1. I was very afraid as I watched the child *moving quickly* across that busy road. 2. *Removing the cover*, the child reached into the box to see what his birthday present was. 3. I *find it difficult to choose* between buying a new car and having a good holiday. 4. The photograph of the unpopular leader *was roughly removed* in the night by the enemy. 5. It's dangerous the way cars *move* along these narrow winding streets.

3. trouble

1. May I *ask* you for a match? 2. She can look after herself, and she's not worth *worrying about*. 3. Please don't *worry* about that one little mistake, you're forgiven. 4. I don't want to *bother* you with all my little difficulties, but I wonder if you could help me first once more? 5. He was deeply *worried* by what he heard. 6. His conscience *worried* him. 7. I won't *bother* you if you are busy.

4. go

1. Which station does the train *start* from? 2. Let's *start* from the top of the page. 3. My son *attends* university. 4. How long do children have *to attend* school in this country? 5. The plane has already *departed*. 6. I *intend* to change my job. 7. The engine *is functioning* well. 8. His sight is *giving way*. 9. Summer *has* already *passed*. 10. She *is losing* her eyesight. 11. It's easy in this city *to travel* by bus. 12. Mother is much better, thank you, she is able *to move* a bit more. 13. There are a lot of colds *spreading* just now. 14. Half the guards *chased* the escaped prisoners, but they got away free. 15. I wouldn't advise you *to oppose* the director. 16. It *is opposite* my nature to get up early in the morning. 17. Is your work *making progress* now that the materials have arrived? 18. Can I *accompany* you? 19. Our dog *attacked* the postman again this morning, he'll get us into trouble. 20. There was no answer to my knock, so I *left*. 21. When do the children *return* to school? 22. My family can be *traced* since the 15th century. 23. The money that I won *exceeded* my fondest hopes. 24. He *exceeded* his authority. 25. I shall complain to the bus company, my bus just *passed* the stop empty! 26. The children coughed and coughed because a piece of bread *had been swallowed* the wrong way. 27. The whole house *fell* in flames. 28. The standard of performance *has become lower* since last year. 29. Three ships *sank* in last night's storm off the coast. 30. Our holiday was fine until Jim *fell ill* with a bad cold. 31. Would you *fetch* some milk for me? 32. The piano is too big, it won't *fit* in that space. 33. The police *examined* the man's story to see if he was telling the truth. 34. I hear their son *has joined* the army. 35. The grenade *exploded* by mistake. 36. The wedding *took place* as planned. 37. Don't drink the milk, it's *turned sour*.

38. I can't *live* like this, I've got to get help. 39. As the weeks *passed*, still no letter arrived. 40. The telephone rang just as I was *leaving* the house. 41. Formal methods of teaching *stop being popular*, and new ones are coming in all the time. 42. The proposal *was approved* by the ministry. 43. Has the sale of the house been *completed* yet? 44. Strength and sensitivity do not often *happen together*. 45. I like the way the blue carpet and the gold curtains *suit each other*. 46. Smoke *was rising* in a straight line, showing that there was no wind. 47. How many new houses *have been built* this year? 48. A chemical factory *was destroyed by explosion* in the North of England, killing many people. 49. We enjoyed our holiday, although we *travelled* with our neighbours. 50. It's unhealthy and dangerous *to live without* sleep.

V. Insert the appropriate particle.

1. draw

1. The days begin to draw ... when November comes. 2. Hastily John drew ... his boots and rushed out into the street. 3. She drew ... her gloves and put them on the little table. 4. The crowd drew ... to let the prisoner pass. 5. She put her hand on his shoulder and then drew it ... 6. The girl drew him ... and whispered: "I want to have a word with you." 7. And though he sat there, blushing and humble, again she felt drawn ... him. 8. The woman was drawing water ... a well, when he arrived home. 9. The car drew ... from the kerb. 10. He drew ... his remarks to a great length. 11. Flattery will constantly draw her ... 12. The days draw ..., the weather gets warmer. 13. The Barons drew ... the Magna Charta setting forth their claims. 14. There are some chairs against the wall, Robert, won't you draw them ... and sit down. 15. This tooth really hurts. I may have to have it drawn ... 16. She went to the bank and drew some money ...

2. tear

1. Across the river were the broken walls of old houses that were being torn ... 2. He took his spare shirt and tore ... several strips. 3. I used to feel it was like killing someone to tear ... a photograph. 4. I can't tear myself ... from this book. 5. Look at this picture which I tore ... the newspaper. 6. He was torn ... his wife and his

mother. 7. I just saw Jim tearing ... the street: what was all the hurry about?

3. go

1. The story is going ... the town. 2. They went ... each other with their fists. 3. The railway goes ... the whole country. 4. Go ... your father and give him his gloves. 5. I can't accept this, it goes ... my principles. 6. I'll be late for supper, so just go ... without me. 7. I'll go ... with you as far as the theatre building. 8. She is not the person to go ... her word. 9. It goes ... the bounds of common politeness. 10. I think I shall go ... to the country for the week-end. 11. He goes ... next term. 12. The ship went ... with all hands. 13. The moon went ... behind the pasture. 14. But the water would not go ... Harriet could not drink the water. 15. Prices of all farm products are expected to go ... 16. The inflammation should go ... in a few days. 17. The fire slowly went ... 18. History book that goes ... to the 18th century. 19. The speaker went ... the profiteers. 20. Are you going ... the Civil Service Examination? 21. She said flatly she was not going ... teaching. 22. He has gone ... the Navy. 23. "I'll go ... the matter," he said, "and let you know." 24. Perhaps the sound of those rockets alarmed you, they went ... so very sudden. 25. He is unconscious. He just half comes to himself from time to time and moans and then goes ... again. 26. That beer had gone ... and was stale. 27. How time goes ...! 28. I've seen such things going ... in the world. 29. You are too kind to me, I don't deserve it after the way I've gone ... 30. Go ... what you were saying. 31. She goes ... a great deal. 32. Long skirts are gradually going ... 33. Suddenly his lamp went ... as if extinguished by a soft breath. 34. The class have gone ... this book twice. 35. Let's go ... the sonata once more. 36. Poor Eliza had to go ... that ordeal for months. 37. My book went ... ten impressions. 38. Do you think that Bill will go ...? 39. I'm going ... to town this afternoon. 40. I was awarded a University open scholarship in mathematics and naturally expected to go ... to the University. 41. The infant death-rate went ... something frightful. 42. The value of the land is certain to go ... 43. The whole building went ... in smoke. 44. Can a singular verb go ... a plural noun? 45. I am looking for a jumper to go ... my new suit. 46. When I am very busy I go ... my lunch.

VI. Give your reasons for the choice of the verbs *to pull*, *to drag* or *to draw* in the following pairs of sentences.

1. The girl is pulling the sledge. An old woman was slowly dragging a sledge with a bag of potatoes on it.
2. A man drew the chair to the table as he spoke. The small boy was dragging a chair behind him.
3. The woman pulled off her gloves and threw them on the table. Then she drew a handkerchief out of her pocket.
4. Seized with fear, she pulled the child to her. The mother drew the child aside and whispered: "You must say 'Thank you!'"
5. The horse is pulling a cart. The man moved forward slowly as he was dragging a cart full of wood.
6. The workers were drawing a telephone wire across the yard. She pulled a piece of wire over the door and a soft bell was heard behind it.
7. He took her by the arm and gently drew her aside. Somebody was pulling me by the arm.
8. The dogs were dragging a sled to the top of the hill. Don't pull the sledge, push it slightly and it will go easily down the hill.

VII. State the difference between (a) "draw" and "drag", (b) "pull" and "drag" in the following sentences arranged in pairs.

A. 1. ... he *drew* a chair *up* to my companion and seated himself with his bony knees almost touching him. 2. "Come and sit down," she cried, *dragging* her big chair up to the fire, "in this comfy chair."

B. 1. He *pulled on* his cap, lurched desperately through the doorway, and was gone. 2. Still keeping on her nightdress she began to *drag on* her clothes. 3. He *pulled* the curtains *back*. 4. He stayed there until a lieutenant jumped down from the ridge and picked him up and *dragged* him back.

VIII. Find out the meanings in which “draw” and “drag” are used in the sentences below. State where the meanings are figurative and where literal.

1. Fielding found himself *drawn* more and more into Miss Quested's affairs. 2. Your absence, I may remark, *drew* commentaries. 3. The sound of a popping cork *dragged* him from reverie. 4. He *drew* his fingers over his eyes, trying to find out where he was. 5. Now she was so tired she could not *drag* herself to dress. 6. He is the first man that ever *drew* passing notice from Ruth. 7. He felt the oil *dragging* him like a net. 8. Ted King went over into the space before the marble fireplace. He coughed *to draw* the others' attention.

IX. Fill in the appropriate synonyms

a) to pull, to drag, to draw

1. The woman ... the curtains down carefully lest she should wake the baby. 2. The girl ... off her gloves. 3. The porter ... the heavy trunks with much effort. 4. Hearing the wolves' howl, the woman ... the child to her. 5. The man ... out his handkerchief and wiped his face. 6. The ant was trying to ... a big piece of grass to the anthill. 7. When the boy came to himself he ... the pilot out of the broken cabin and helped the other five passengers. 8. The crying child was ... his mother by the sleeve but the woman did not move. 9. They ... nearer the fire and began to sing. 10. The boy ran toward the train ... his sister with him. 11. As the well was not deep it was not difficult to ... water. 12. The child did not want to walk, the mother had to make every effort to ... him with her. 13. "Don't ... my hair, you hurt me." 14. The dentist ... my tooth out so quickly that I had no time to cry. 15. "Mike, get up, or I'll ... you out of bed." 16. "Do you see this string? If you ... it, you can shut the window."

b) to look, to gaze, to stare, to eye

1. Montanely found Arthur sitting on the bench in the same attitude as an hour before ... with wide open eyes at the glittering mountains around him. 2. Julia snatched the paper from her husband, ... at it and held it out to Arthur. 3. James pushed his chair away from the table, and sat ... at Arthur too much astonished for anger. 4. Arthur found himself in brightly lighted room ... in confused wonder at the table and the papers and the officers sitting in their accustomed

places. 5. The man with the wooden leg ... David all over and locked the gate behind him. 6. Kate stood ... at the wonderful toys in the bright window. She could not tear herself away. 7. She sat there as if stunned, ... into nothingness. 8. They all ... at him in horror.

c) to trouble, to worry, to bother

1. Don't ... about your son. He'll be all right soon. 2. May I help you with your suit-case? Don't ... I'll manage. 3. "What ... you?" "Oh, I have an awful headache, doctor." 4. Excuse me for ... you. Is Mr. Brown in? 5. Mothers always ... about their children. 6. Don't ... trouble until trouble ... you.

d) to bring up, to rear, to educate, to breed, to train

1. My little daughter took over the ... of the puppy. 2. I run a mile a day, when I am in ... 3. ... is more than mere learning by rote. 4. She ... her three children under difficult circumstances. 5. The wealthy send their sons to public schools to be ... 6. You can always tell a well-... man by his manners. 7. She is ... to be a nurse. 8. ... sheep develops the leg muscles. 9. But ... cattle requires much less walking. 10. He ... the finest cattle in the country. 11. A ... footballer has to be fit. 12. To watch him act is an ... in itself. 13. The herd has been improved by selective ... 14. You have ... your children to be a credit to you, Mrs. Jones. 15. They ... their brood with gentle care and affection. 16. He was ... in the country. 17. "Where were you ...?" – "At a teachers' ... college." 18. He is remarkably arrogant for an ... man. 19. You weren't ... to do that. 20. He was ... under heartbreaking conditions. 21. In the 19th century women were denied an ... 22. The soldiers had six hours of hard ... per day. 23. She's a well-... woman and speaks beautifully. 24. They were responsible for my ... 25. She was ... by her grandparents. 26. It takes three years to ... a teacher. 27. I'm trying to ... my dog to jump fences. 28. I ... the bird from a chick.

e) to go or to walk

1. At what age did you begin to ...? 2. Did you see which way he ...? 3. Dan likes to ... in the woods. 4. ... is a very good kind of recreation. 5. Where were you ... when I met you in the street? 6. I was so tired I could hardly ... 7. I had such a bad headache I

decided to ... it off. 8. When you ... to the institute tomorrow don't forget to call on me. 9. Jack is so fond of ... Yesterday he took me for a ... and nearly ... me off my legs. 10. The snow was so deep, it was difficult to ... 11. Our park is large and wild and I like to ... there; I ... there whenever I have any spare time.

f) to go, to walk, to step, to stride

1. Ten miles! That's a long way to ... 2. I ... to school in London. 3. May I ... to the picnic, too? 4. ... is good exercise for the figure. 5. We shall have to take ... to prevent it happening again. 6. Sergeant: "Keep in ... there! Jones! You're out of ..." 7. The economy is advancing with great ... 8. He bought the shop as a ... concern. 9. He reached her in three ... 10. They organize an annual road ... from London to Brighton. 11. One false ... and you'll be over the cliff. 12. Our daughter could ... when she was a year old. 13. "This watch has stopped." – "That's funny, it was ... five minutes ago." 14. I could hear foot ... following me in the darkness. 15. You'll have to take bigger ... if we're to reach home by nightfall. 16. Are we ... the right way? 17. She ... into the room and sat down blushing furiously. 18. He ... onto the stage and faced the audience. 19. "How is the new apprentice doing?" – "Making great ..." 20. He ... forward and took charge of the situation. 21. Fiest ... aside and let the others have a chance. 22. Sleep ... can be very dangerous.

g) to drive, to ride, to travel or to go

1. We ... along on the crest of the wave. 2. Where did you ... for your holiday. 3. ... broadens the mind. 4. If you ... too fast, you'll be fined. 5. The train ... saw the signal just in time. 6. What speed were you ... at? 7. I like to ... in front, beside the driver. 8. I ... to Italy last year. 9. ... should be considerate to pedestrians. 10. We shall ... by boat and train. 11. I was sick when we ... to London. 12. I'll ... I'm sure you're tired after your journey. 13. We ... from the station to the airport in 20 minutes. 14. I took her for ... along the front. 15. Please ... into town and buy me a packet of cigarettes. 16. You'll have to ... far to find a better view than this. 17. Can you ... a bicycle? 18. My wife went for a ... test yesterday. 19. She passed and obtained her ... licence. 20. The taxi driver ... slowly so that I could see the sight.

h) to lack or to want

1. Martin did not know where to begin his studies and continually suffered from ... of preparation. 2. It was not that his brain was weak or incapable, it could think these thoughts were it not for ... of training in thinking. 3. He was physically exhausted with hunger, foul weather, and ... of sleep, every bone in his body seemed to ache separately. 4. For a long time Manson did not speak to Christine about his love for ... of an opportunity. 5. He ... the courage to tell her the truth. 6. He had always ... a sense of humour. So we never joked with him. 7. Though he did not like Kate and was secretly a little afraid of her, he realized that without her his drawing-room would ... a great attraction.

i) to want, to lack, to be absent, to be missing

1. I think your behaviour is ... in courtsey. 2. All that he ... is a little education. 3. All her jewels were ... 4. He is ... in a little tact. 5. How many children are ... this morning? 6. There was an ... of warmth in his character. 7. The ... man turned up unexpectedly. 8. There is no ... of rain in the tropics. 9. They were tried in the balance and found ... 10. If you are in ... of anything, just let me know. 11. He certainly did not ... courage. 12. If John weren't ..., the whole family would have been there. 13. Where have you been? You've been ... for a long time. 14. There's a book ... from this shelf. 15. She is pretty, but she ... charm. 16. She will see to it that we do not ... for anything. 17. There was a complete ... of inhibitions among the children. 18. She was ... from home when the burglary occurred. 19. Where's the dog? He's been ... for days. 20. The plant died through ... of moisture. 21. We couldn't start the match, as four of the players were ... 22. They died in thousands through ... of nourishment. 23. I ... an interesting companion with whom I could chatter.

X. Insert "to come" or "to go" in the required form.

1. At what time do you ... home from the institute? 2. It will be very convenient if you ... over after six. I'll surely be at home by then. 3. My dog always ... when I whistle to him. 4. ... on Friday. I'll be expecting friends whom I want you to meet. 5. How happy I was when at last my dream ... true. 6. You must ... to the shop. He

needs some bread. 7. When you ... to the library, get me some interesting book. 8. I don't understand what you mean. Please ... to the point. 9. We are going to the woods tomorrow. Won't you ... with us? 10. At our house-warming we had very many guests; people kept ... all evening. 11. I must see you very urgently; ... over as soon as you can. 12. I was standing at the top of the stairs, and he was ... up. 13. We are ... to the cinema. Will you ... with us. 14. Where are you ... from? 15. She is ... towards us.

XI. Answer the questions.

1. Do you know any person who is a great draw? 2. What do you use when you want to draw a cork out of a bottle, nails from a plank, water from a well? 3. Why do street accidents always draw crowds? 4. What do you usually do or say if you want to draw somebody's attention to the problem you are interested in? 5. Can you draw any comparison between the educational systems in Britain and in this country? 6. Can you draw well and are you fond of drawing? 7. Why do you think even grown-up people remain only children in their parents' eyes? 8. What does a girl do if she makes eyes at a man? 9. What do you think the reasons for giving somebody a black eye might be? 10. What books interest you so much that you can't tear yourself away from them? 11. What would you do if you saw a masked man tearing out of the bank and jumping into a waiting car? 12. What can we do if our friends are in trouble? 13. Do you always trouble to explain things if you are asked to? 14. What kind of a person should an educator be? 15. Is education free and compulsory in our country? 16. Do you prefer going by plane or by train? 17. What should a person do if he / she has gone too far? 18. Shall we go to great trouble to make our guests comfortable? Why? 19. What do you do with the clothes which have gone out of fashion? 20. How much of your money goes on food and clothes / in rent? 21. Do you often go against your own principles? 22. What do you do if you happen to go back on your word? 23. What sports and hobbies do you go in for? 24. Do you like to go out? 25. What colours go together? 26. What man / woman would you call a man / woman after your own heart? 27. Does it break your heart to see the children starving? 28. Did you ever happen to have your heart in your mouth? 29. Do students like to

learn poems by heart? Why? 30. What do students lack? 31. What film do we call a feature film? 32. What are the best features of your personality? 33. What do painters use to make a painting?

XII. Under what circumstances would you say?

1. The game ended in a draw. 2. She didn't feel drawn towards him. 3. This happened before my very eyes. 4. I can't get in touch with my friend, she is up to the eyes in work. 5. Oh, keep an eye on that small dark-haired boy! 6. His pictures are always eye-catching. 7. Oh, what a pity, you've torn a hole in your jacket! 8. Don't trouble trouble until trouble troubles you. 9. May I trouble you for a match? 10. No country can afford to neglect education. 11. He went grey with worry. 12. Go easy with her, she's too young to realize her mistake. 13. I've been going hard all day and I'm exhausted. 14. I'm afraid the car must go. 15. If you go on like this you'll be thrown out. 16. I say it from the bottom of my heart. 17. Bear in mind that he is a person who wears his heart on his sleeve. 18. What she lacks in experience she makes up in curiosity. 19. He is not so black as he is painted.

XIII. Translate into English.

1. Viņš saprata, ka patreiz viņam nāksies savilkt jostu ciešāk un papūlēties iekrāt mazliet naudas. 2. Zvejnieks izvilka laivu krastā un devās mājup. 3. Lai nopirktu māju, viņiem nācās izmantot savus iekrājumus. 4. Savai daiļradei viņš smēlās iedvesmu no dabas un apkārtējiem cilvēkiem. 5. Nevajag vilkt paralēles starp šiem abiem notikumiem. 6. Varēja manīt, ka notikumi tuvojās beigām. 7. Tuvojās rudens, un dienas kļuva īsākas. 8. Sadzirdējies suņus nikni rejam pagalmā, saimnieks steidzīgi uzvilka zābakus un devās ārā. 9. Kad būsiet nometnē, turiet visu laiku acis vaļā, jo ar bērniem var daudz kas atgadīties. 10. Tiesā viņš bija vienīgais aculiecinieks. 11. Viņi greizsirdīgi vēroja mūs. 12. Izlasījusi viņa vēstuli, Elizabete saplēsa to gabalos. 13. Viņa svārstījās starp to, vai pirt jaunu mašīnu, jebšu braukt ceļojumā uz ārzemēm, un nevarēja nekādi izlemt. 14. Zēns uz velosipēda drāzās pa ielu, neskatīdamies ne pa labi, ne pa kreisi. 15. Kad skolotājs ienāca klasē, viņam bija norūpējies izskats. 16. Matemātika viņam nesagādā grūtības. 17. Meitene pat nepapūlējās atbildēt un pagriezusies izgāja no istabas. 18. Blakus istabā

varēja dzirdēt bērna mokošo klepu. 19. Vai varu palūgt maizi? 20. Tu allaž sagādā rūpes saviem vecākiem. 21. Bērni jāmaca uzvesties labi sabiedriskās vietās. 22. Daudzi cilvēki tiecas iegūt augstāko izglītību. 23. Māja jāpārdod. 24. Ciematā nepārtraukti cirkulēja baumas par viņu precībām. 25. Šie noteikumi ir pretrunā ar cilvēktiesībām. 26. Nav godīgi lauzt doto vārdu. 27. Šovakar saule norietēja jau pēc 9.00. 28. Naktī vētra norima, un kuģi varēja doties jūrā. 29. Pēdējā laikā produktu cenas stipri kritušās. 30. Visos laikrakstos žurnālisti uzbruka jaunajam premjeram, asi kritizējami viņa ārpolitiku. 31. Viņš kolekcionē gleznas. 32. Es taisos kārtot ek-sāmenus Latvijas universitātē. 33. Izrāde izdevās laba. 34. Jaunās preces ātri izpārdeva. 35. Viņš saņēma bezdarbnieka pabalstu. 36. Šāda mūzika vairs nav modē. 37. Ja tu zinātu, ko viņa savā mūžā ir izcietusi, tu nebrīnītos par viņas vājo veselību. 38. Komiteja pieņēma projektu. 39. Šīs gaišās mēbeles labi sader kopā ar pelēkajām istabas sienām. 40. Bija vērojams, ka cenas visām precēm strauji ceļas. 41. Pats par sevi saprotams, ka es tev palīdzēšu. 42. Viņš izvēlējās dāvanu pēc sirds patikas. 43. Sirds dziļumos viņš zi-nāja, ka nekad nedosies viņai līdzī. 44. Viņa mīlēja šos bērnus ar visu sirdi un dvēseli. 45. Jaunā skolotāja bija skaista un ļoti atklāta. 46. Zēns aizgāja gulēt, dziļi nelaimīgs. 47. Saņemtās ziņas iedrošināja meiteni, un viņa izlēma doties ceļā viena pati. 48. Man trūkst vārdu, lai izteiktu savu sašutumu. 49. Lakonisks stils ir šī rakstnieka darbu svarīgākā iezīme. 50. Kā tu raksturotu šo ainavu? 51. Viņš nemaz nav tik slikts, kā viņu iztēlo.

TEXT EXERCISES

I. Answer the questions.

1. Why did Nicholas stand in the school-room, staring about him?
2. What did he see there?
3. What did the pupils look like?
4. What made this scene grotesque?
5. Why was brimstone and treacle given to the boys?
6. What did Mr. Squeers look like when he entered the classroom and started the lesson?
7. How did he begin the lesson?
8. Which class was it and what subjects did they study?
9. What methods of teaching were applied at this school?
10. What was Mr. Squeers' idea about practical way of teaching?
11. How

was it applied? 12. What were the boys supposed to do to study grammar and botany? 13. Why did Mr. Squeers want to know Nicholas' opinion of his way of teaching? Was it important for him to know it? 14. What are your reactions to Squeers's definitions and spellings? 15. What do you think the advantages and disadvantages of Mr. Squeers's philosophy of education are? 16. How would you describe Mr. Squeers? 17. Is it difficult to find a good teacher? Why?

II. Pick out from the text words and phrases bearing on:

- 1) classroom furniture;
- 2) classroom activities;
- 3) teacher's personality.

Use them in your own situations and descriptions.

III. Pick out the words and phrases you find unusual or problematic, and see if you can guess their meaning.

IV. Find Latvian for:

a crowded scene; the remainder was stopped up with ...; shaky desks; cut and inked; bony figures; darkened with suffering; to lack the spirit; dirty rags; grotesque features; basin of brimstone and treacle; delicious mixture; corporal punishment; at a gasp; to spoil one's appetite; that's fair enough; to finish the procedure; to choke; very profound; to call sb. up; to line up; an opening in the wall; to weed the garden; a quadruped; washing day; cunning; to idle about; exciting occupation; salt beef.

V. Can you find words or phrases in the text which are used in a figurative sense? What effect do you think the author wanted to produce by using them?

VI. Retell the text and then give its summary.

VII. Make up and act out dialogues between:

- 1) Mr. Squeers and Nicholas discussing the procedure in the classroom.
- 2) Mr. Squeers and Nicholas discussing the teaching problems.
- 3) Mr. Squeers and the pupils in the classroom.

VIII. Speak on the plot of the text. Was it interesting to read? Why?

IX. What do you think of the life and education system at Mr. Squeers's school? What impression did it produce on you?

DISCUSSION EXERCISES

I. Read the text.

DECLINE AND FALL

(an extract)

"That's your little mob in there," said Grimes; "you let them out at eleven."

"But what am I to teach them?" said Paul in sudden panic.

"Oh, I shouldn't try to *teach* them anything, not just yet, anyway. Just keep them quiet."

"Now that's a thing I've never learned to do," sighed Mr. Prendergast.

Paul watched him amble into his classroom at the end of the passage, where a burst of applause greeted his arrival. Dumb with terror he went into his own classroom.

Ten boys sat before him, their hands folded, their eyes bright with expectation.

"Good morning, sir," said the one nearest him.

"Good morning," said Paul.

"Good morning, sir," said the next.

"Good morning," said Paul.

"Good morning, sir," said the next.

"Oh shut up," said Paul.

At this the boy took out a handkerchief and began to cry quietly.

"Oh, sir," came a chorus of reproach, "you've hurt his feelings. He's very sensitive; it's his Welsh blood, you know; it makes people very emotional. Say 'Good morning' to him sir, or he won't be happy all day. After all, it is a good morning, isn't it, sir?"

"Silence!" shouted Paul above the uproar, and for a few moments things were quieter.

"Please, sir," said a small voice – Paul turned and saw a grave-looking youth holding up his hand – "please, sir, perhaps he's been smoking cigars and doesn't feel well."

"Silence!" said Paul again.

The ten boys stopped talking and sat perfectly still staring at him. He felt himself getting hot and red under their scrutiny.

"I suppose the first thing I ought to do is get your names clear. What is your name?" he asked, turning to the first boy.

"Tangent, sir."

"And yours?"

"Tangent, sir," said the next boy. Paul's heart sank.

"But you can't both be called Tangent."

"No, sir, *I'm* Tangent. He's just trying to be funny."

"I like that. *Me* trying to be funny! Please, sir, I'm Tangent, sir; really I am."

"If it comes to that," said Clutterbuck from the back of the room, "there is one Tangent here, and that is me. Anyone else can jolly well go to blazes."

Paul felt desperate.

"Well, is there anyone who isn't Tangent?"

Four of five voices instantly arose.

"I'm not, sir; I'm not Tangent. I wouldn't be called Tangent, not on the end of a barge pole."

In a few seconds the room had become divided into parties: those who were Tangent and those were not. Blows were already being exchanged, when the door opened and Grimes came in. There was a slight hush.

"I thought you might want this," he said, handing Paul a walking-stick. "And if you take my advice, you'll set them something to do."

He went out; and Paul, firmly grasping the walking-stick, faced his form.

"Listen," he said. "I don't care a damn what any of you are called, but if there's another word from anyone I shall keep you all in this afternoon."

"You can't keep me in," said Clutterbuck; "I'm going for a walk with Captain Grimes."

“Then I shall very nearly kill you with this stick. Meanwhile you will all write an essay on ‘Self-indulgence’. There will be a prize of half a crown for the longest essay, irrespective of any possible merit.”

From then onwards all was silence until break. Paul, still holding his stick, gazed despondently out of the window. Now and then there rose from below the shrill voices of the servants scolding each other in Welsh. By the time the bell rang Clutterbuck had covered sixteen pages, and was awarded the half-crown.

“Did you find those boys difficult to manage?” asked Mr. Prendergast, filling his pipe.

“Not at all,” said Paul.

Evelyn Waugh

II. Decide which of the following best describes the pupils’ attitude to Paul:

1. They want to make fun of him.
2. They want to humiliate him.
3. They are studying him.
4. They want to be dominated by him.

III. Read texts A, B, C.

A. BOTH SIDES OF THE QUESTION

A scholar came to a broad and deep river and wanted to cross it. He hired a boat to take him across. The river was stormy.

“Have you studied history, boatman?” inquired the scholar.

“No, I have never studied it,” was the reply.

“Then you have lost a fourth of your life. Have you studied the dead languages?”

“I haven’t and neither do I care.”

“Then you’ve wasted half of your life. And what about literature?”

“I haven’t studied it either.”

“Then three-fourths of your life are lost.”

They had reached the middle of the river. A big wave hit the side of the boat and upset it.

“Have you learned to swim, scholar?” cried the boatman.

“No,” answered the scholar.

“Well, then all four quarters of your life are lost, unless you hold on to my shoulders.”

B. A FORTUNATE REPLY

A law student had repeatedly failed in his examination. He was allowed to take it for the last time. The student was very anxious to pass it, for in case of failure he would have to leave the university.

The professor’s first question was: “What do you understand in the law by the term ‘malice’?”

“Malice,” said the student at once, “would be if you failed me in this examination, for the law qualifies as malice any action of ill will committed by a person to harm another person by taking advantage of the latter’s ignorance.”

C.

Teacher (questioning the terrified class): “And now I want you, boys, to tell me who wrote ‘Hamlet’.”

Frightened Boy: “P-p-please, sir, it-it wasn’t me.”

That same evening the teacher was talking to his host, the squire of the village. The teacher said:

“Most amusing thing happened today. I was questioning the class over at school, and I asked a boy who wrote ‘Hamlet’. He answered tearfully, ‘P-p-please, sir, it wasn’t me’.”

After loud and prolonged laughter, the squire said: “That’s pretty good, and I suppose the little rascal had done it all the same!”

IV. Make up questions on the texts and ask your fellow students to answer them.

V. Retell the texts on the part of:

- A.** 1. the scholar;
2. the boatman.
- B.** 1. the law student;
2. the professor.

- C. 1. the superintendent;
2. the squire;
3. the frightened boy.

VI. Read and interpret the following maxims:

1. Education then, beyond all other devices of human origin, is the great equalizer of the conditions of men – the balance wheel of the social machinery. *Horace Mann*
2. Training is everything. The peach was once a bitter almond; cauliflower is nothing but a cabbage with a college education. *Mark Twain*
3. A teacher affects eternity; he can never tell where his influence stops. *Henry Adam*
4. There are two ways of spreading light; to be the candle or to be the mirror that reflects it. *Edith Wharton*
5. To know that we know what we know, and that we do not know what we do not know, that is true knowledge. *Henry David Thoreau*
6. Happiness lies not in knowledge, but in achievement of knowledge. *Edgar Allan Poe*
7. The things taught in schools and colleges are not education, but the means of education. *Ralph Waldo Emerson*
8. Nothing in education is so astonishing as the amount of ignorance it accumulates in the form of inert fact. *Henry Adams*
9. Education breeds a dislike of violence. *Seymour L. Halleck*
10. There is nothing so stupid as an educated man, if you get him off the thing he was educated in. *Will Rogers*
11. An expert is one who knows more and more about less and less. *Nicholas M. Butler*

VII. Make up dialogues and discuss these maxims.

VIII. Read the proverbs and use them in your own situations illustrating the ideas expressed in them.

1. To teach one's grandmother to suck eggs.
2. To tell tales out of school.
3. Too much knowledge makes the head bald.
4. Zeal without knowledge is a runaway horse.
5. Live and learn.

IX. Read the story and say which of the proverbs mentioned above makes the best ending to it.

THE PROFESSOR COULD NOT ANSWER IT

Old Mr. Brompton is a very clever man. Yet the other day he could not answer his granddaughter's question. "Grandpa," she said, "I saw something so funny running across the kitchen floor without any legs. What do you think it was?" Grandpa thought and thought, but at last he had to give up.

"What was it?" he asked.

"Water," replied the little girl triumphantly.

X. Read the anecdotes and tell them to your groupmates.

1. Prof.: "Can you tell me anything about the great chemists of the 17th century?"
Stud.: "They are all dead, sir."
2. At a college examination a professor said: "Does the question embarrass you?"
"Not at all, sir," replied the student, "not at all. It is the answer that bothers me."
3. The professor rapped on his desk and shouted: "Gentlemen, order!"
The entire class yelled: "Beer!"
4. The bright student looked long and thoughtfully at the second examination question, which read: "State the number of tons of coal shipped out of the United States in any given year." Then his brow cleared and he wrote: "1492 – none."
5. The professor was delivering the final lecture of the term. He dwelt with much emphasis on the fact that each student should devote all the intervening time preparing for the final examinations.
"The examination papers are now in the hands of the printer. Are there any questions to be asked?"
Silence prevailed. Suddenly a voice from the rear inquired: "Who is the printer?"

- 6.** During a Christmas exam, one of the questions was: "What causes a depression?" One of the students wrote: "God knows! I don't. Merry Christmas!"
The exam paper came back with the prof's notation: "God gets 100, you get zero. Happy New Year!"
- 7.** Prof.: "A fool can ask more questions than a wise man can answer."
Stud.: "No wonder so many of us flunk in our exams!"
- 8.** Prof.: "You missed my class yesterday, didn't you?"
Stud.: "Not in the least, sir, not in the least."
- 9.** Prof.: "Tell me one or two things about John Milton."
Stud.: "Well, he got married and he wrote "Paradise Lost". Then his wife died and he wrote "Paradise Regained"."
- 10.** Prof.: "You can't sleep in my class."
Stud.: "If you didn't talk so loud I could."
- 11.** Prof.: "Wake up that fellow next to you."
Stud.: "You do it, prof, you put him to sleep."
- 12.** "I shall now illustrate what I have in mind," said the professor as he erased the board.
- 13.** In one of college classes the professor was unable to stay for the class, so he placed a sign on the door which read as follows: "Professor Blank will be unable to meet his classes to-day."
Some college lad, seeing his chance to display his sense of humour after reading the notice, walked up and erased the "c" in the word "classes". The professor noticing the laughter wheeled around, walked back, looked at the student, then at the sign with the "c" erased – calmly walked up and erased the "l" in "lasses", looked at the flabbergasted student and proceeded on his way.
- 14.** Pam: "Hasn't Harvey ever married?"
Beryl: "No, and I don't think he intends to, because he's studying for a bachelor's degree."

15. Rupert: "What did you do with the cuffs I left on the table last night?"
Roland: "They were so soiled I sent them to the laundry."
Rupert: "Ye gods, the entire history of England was on them."

XI. Try to remember some funny episode from the students' life at your university and tell it to your groupmates.

JUST FOR FUN

I. Read this and learn it by heart.

1. The more we study, the more we know. The more we know, the more we forget. The more we forget, the less we know. The less we know, the less we forget. The less we forget, the more we know. So why study?
2. A son at college wrote his father: "No mon, no fun, your son."
The father answered: "How sad, too bad, your dad."

UNIT 5

ARCHIBALD JOSEPH CRONIN (1896–1981)

A.J. Cronin was born on July 19, 1896 at Cardross, Dumbartonshire, Scotland, into an Irish family. He was educated at Dumbarton Academy and in 1914 he went to Glasgow University where he began to study medicine. However, his studies were soon interrupted by World War I and he went to serve in the Navy as a surgeon. In 1919 Cronin graduated from Glasgow University and embarked as ship's surgeon on a liner bound for India. After that he held various hospital appointments in different towns of Scotland. In 1921 he got married and began his practice in South Wales. There he got acquainted with the miners' life and came to sympathize with them. At this time Cronin also studied hard to receive higher medical degrees. In 1924 he was appointed Medical Inspector of Mines in Wales. A year later Cronin was awarded his M.D. by the University of Glasgow, with honours. Subsequently he started practice in the West End of London. Later on a lot of what he experienced in South Wales appeared in his books, in *The Citadel* in particular. However, overwork made his health break down and in 1930 he had to give medicine up. Cronin decided to try his hand at literature. In 1931 he published his first novel "Hatter's Castle" which was a tremendous success. A.J. Cronin now made his choice and determined to devote himself entirely to literature. In fact, to become a writer had been his cherished desire since boyhood and now his dream was a reality.

His first novel "Hatter's Castle" is an extremely gloomy and tragic history of a family ruled by a high-handed proprietor, Mr. Brodie.

In 1935 his next novel "The Stars Look Down" was published, and it marked the beginning of Cronin's most mature period. The book expresses the author's deep sympathy with the struggle of the miners for a better future and it deals with burning problems of life.

His novel "The Citadel" appeared in 1937. It is usually considered to be Cronin's masterpiece. In this book Cronin deals

with the life and work of an intellectual in the capitalist world. He shows that the profession of a doctor, honourable and important as it is, is often regarded only as a means of making money. Thus a physician faces an alternative, either to prosper at the expense of others or to do his best to help poor suffering humanity and so be doomed to poverty. Andrew Manson, the main character of "The Citadel", has to face this alternative. The book describes different aspects of life in the first half of the 20th century, which the author knew well from his own experience.

Among his other works are: The Keys of the Kingdom (1941), The Green Years (1944), Shannon's Way (1948), Adventures in Two Worlds (1952), The Northern Light (1958), A Song of Sixpence (1964) and others.

Answer the questions:

1. What did A. Cronin study?
2. Why did he interrupt his studies?
3. What can you tell about his career?
4. Why did he give medicine up?
5. Why did he decide to devote himself to literature?
6. What does he write about in his novels?

THE CITADEL

(an extract)

And now he was in Blaenelly, rising, shaving, dressing, all in a haze of worry over his first patient. He ate his breakfast quickly, then ran up to his room again. There he opened his bag and took out a small blue leather case. He opened the case and gazed earnestly at the medal inside – the Hunter Gold Medal, awarded annually at St. Andrews to the best student in clinical medicine. He, Andrew Manson, had won it. He prized it beyond everything, had come to regard it as his talisman, his inspiration for the future. But this morning he viewed it less with pride than with a queer, secret entreaty, as though trying to restore his confidence in himself. Then he hurried out for the morning surgery.

Fortunately there were few people at the morning surgery, which was over at half-past ten, and Andrew, presented with a list of visits by Jenkins, set out at once with Thomas in the gig. With an

almost painful expectancy he told the old groom to drive direct to 7 Glydar Place.

Twenty minutes later he came out of Number 7, pale, with his lips tightly compressed and an odd expression on his face. He went two doors down, into Number 11, which was also on his list. From Number 11 he crossed the street to Number 18. From Number 18 he went round the corner to Radnor Place, where two further cases were marked by Jenkins as having been seen the day before. Altogether, within the space of an hour, he made seven such calls in the immediate vicinity. Five of them, including Number 7 Glydar Place, which was now showing a typical rash, were clear cases of enteric. For the last ten days Jenkins had been treating them with chalk and opium. Now, whatever his own bungling efforts of the previous night had been, Andrew realized with a shiver of apprehension that he had an outbreak of typhoid fever on his hands.

When he got back it was time for evening surgery. For an hour and a half he sat in the little back-shop cubicle which was the consulting-room, wrestling with a packed surgery until the walls sweated and the place was choked with the steam of damp bodies. Miners with beat knee, cut fingers, nystagmus, chronic arthritis. Their wives, too, and their children with coughs, colds, sprains – all the minor ailments of humanity. Normally he would have enjoyed it, welcomed the quiet appraising scrutiny of these dark, sallowskinned people with whom he felt he was on probation. But now, obsessed by the major issue, his head reeled with the impact of these trifling complaints. Yet all the time he was reaching his decision, thinking, as he wrote prescriptions, sounded chests and offered words of advice, “It was he who put me on to the thing. I hate him. Yes, I loathe him – superior devil – like hell. But I can’t help that; I’ll have to go to him.”

At half-past nine, when the last patient had left the surgery, he came out of his den with resolution in his eyes.

“Jenkins, where does Doctor Denny live?”

The little dispenser, hastily bolting the outer door for fear another straggler might come in, turned with a look of horror on his face that was almost comic.

"You aren't goin' to have anything to do with that feller, Doctor. Mrs. Page – she don't like him."

Andrew asked grimly: "Why doesn't Mrs. Page like him?"

"For the same reason everybody don't. 'E's been so damn rude to her." Jenkins paused then; reading Manson's look he added, reluctantly, "Oh, well, if you 'ave to know, it's with Mrs. Seager he stops, Number 49 Chapel Street."

Out again. He had been going the whole day long, yet any tiredness he might have felt was lost in a sense of responsibility, the burden of those cases pressing, pressing urgently upon his shoulders. His main feeling was one of relief when, on reaching Chapel Street, he found that Denny was at his lodging. The landlady showed him in.

If Denny was surprised to see him he concealed it. He merely asked, after a prolonged and aggravating stare, "Well! Killed anybody yet?"

Still standing in the doorway of the warm untidy sitting-room, Andrew reddened. But, making a great effort, he conquered his temper and his pride.

He said abruptly: "You were right. It was enteric. I ought to be shot for not recognizing it. I've got five cases. I'm not exactly overjoyed at having to come here. But I don't know the ropes. I rang the M.O., and couldn't get a word out of him. I've come to ask your advice."

Denny, half-slewed round in his chair by the fire, listening, pipe in mouth, at last made a grudging gesture. "You'd better come in." With sudden irritation: "Oh! and for God's sake take a chair. Don't stand there like a Presbyterian parson about to forbid the banns. Have a drink? No! I thought you wouldn't."

Though Andrew stiffly complied with the request, seating himself and even, defensively, lighting a cigarette, Denny seemed in no hurry. He sat prodding the dog Hawkins with the toe of his burst slipper.

But at length, when Manson had finished his cigarette, Denny said with a jerk of his head: "Take a look at that, if you like!"

On the table indicated a microscope stood, – a fine Zeiss, – and some slides. Andrew focussed a slide, then slid round the oil-

immersion and immediately picked up the rodshaped clusters of the bacteria.

"It's very clumsily done, of course," Denny said quickly and cynically, as though forestalling criticism. "Practically botched, in fact. I'm no lab. merchant, thank God! If anything, I'm a surgeon. But you've got to be jack-of-all-trades under our bloody system. There's no mistake, though even to the naked eye. I cooked them on agar in my oven."

"You've got cases too?" Andrew asked with tense interest.

"Four! All in the same area as yours." He paused. "And these bugs come from the well in Glydar Place."

Andrew gazed at him, alert, burning to ask a dozen questions, realizing something of the genuineness of the other man's work, and, beyond everything, overjoyed that he had been shown the focus of the epidemic.

"You see," Denny resumed with that same cold and bitter irony, "paratyphoid is more or less endemic here. But one day soon, very soon, we're going to have a pretty little blaze-up. It's the main sewer that's to blame. It leaks like the devil, and seeps into half the low wells at the bottom of the town. I've hammered at Griffiths about it till I'm tired. He's a lazy, evasive incompetent, pious swine. Last time I rang him I said I'd knock his block off next time I met him. Probably that's why he welshed on you to-day."

"It's a damned shame," Andrew burst out, forgetting himself in a sudden rush of indignation.

Denny shrugged his shoulders. "He's afraid to ask the Council for anything in case they dock his wretched salary to pay for it."

There was a silence. Andrew had a warm desire that the conversation might continue. Despite his hostility towards Denny, he found a strange stimulus in the other's pessimism, in his scepticism, his cold and measured cynicism. Yet now he had no pretext on which to prolong his stay. He got up from his seat at the table and moved towards the door, concealing his feelings, striving to express a formal gratitude, to give some indications of his relief.

"I'm much obliged for the information. You've let me see how I stand. I was worried about the origin, thought I might be dealing with a carrier; but since you've localized it to the well it's a lot simpler.

From now on every drop of water in Glydar Place is going to be boiled.”

Denny rose also. He growled: “It’s Griffiths who ought to be boiled.” Then, with a return of his satiric humour. “Now, no touching thanks, Doctor, if you please. We shall probably have to endure a little more of each other before this thing is finished. Come and see me any time you can bear it. We don’t have much social life in this neighbourhood.” He glanced at the dog and concluded rudely: “Even a Scots doctor would be welcome. Isn’t that so, Sir John?”

Sir John Hawkins flogged the rug with his tail, his pink tongue lolling derisively at Manson.

Yet, going home via Glydar Place, where he left strict instructions regarding the water supply Andrew realized that he did not detest Denny so much as he had thought.

PHRASES AND WORD COMBINATIONS

1. in a haze of worry
2. immediate vicinity
3. trifling complaints
4. to conquer one’s temper
5. jack-of-all-trades
6. to have no pretext

VOCABULARY ITEMS

1. case n – 1. instance or example of the occurrence of sth.; actual state of affairs; (med.) person suffering from a disease; instance of a diseased condition. If that’s the case, you’ll have to work much harder. I can’t make an exception in your case. There were five cases of influenza. The worst cases were sent to hospital.

(just) in case – if it should happen that; because of a possibility. It may rain – you’d better take an umbrella *(just) in case*. In case I forget, please remind me of my promise.

in case of – in the event of. In case of fire, ring the alarm bell.

in any case – whatever happens or may have happened.

in no case – in no circumstances.

in this / that case – if this happens.

case-history n – record of the history of sb. suffering from a disease.

2. (legal) question to be decided in a law court. When will the case come before the Court?

3. (gram.) (change in the) form of a noun or pronoun that shows its relation to another word. The first person singular personal pronoun in English has two case forms.

2. list n – number of names (of persons, items, things, etc.) written or printed: a shopping list; make a list of things one must do; put sb's name on / take his name off the list.

the active list – list of officers in the armed forces who may be called upon for service.

the free list – a) those goods admitted into a country free of duty.
b) those persons who are admitted to a cinema, theatre, concert hall, etc. without payment.

list v – make a list of; put on a list: list all one's engagements; list sb's name.

3. realize v – 1. be fully conscious of; understand. Does he realize his error yet / realize that you must have help?

2. convert into a fact: realize one's hopes / ambitions.

3. exchange (property, business shares, etc.) for money. Can these shares / bonds, etc. be realized at short notice?

4. realize (on) – (of property, etc.) obtain as a price for or as a profit. The furniture realized a high price at the sale. How much did you realize on the paintings you sent to the sale?

Synonyms: *to realize, to understand.*

Realize is usually preferable to "*understand*" in the sense of "be or become aware of", "recognize" (a fact).

E.g. I realize that you're busy but perhaps you could help me for a moment. Do you realize that it's Saturday? I never realized before how lonely she was.

In some cases *realize* and *understand* have quite different meanings: *E.g.*

I. I realize that ... = I am aware (of the fact) that ...

Suddenly he realized that he was alone in the house.

I understand that ... = I have learnt, I have been told

I understand that you are leaving our department.

II. He didn't realize his mistake = he was not aware that he had made a mistake and implies that when someone tells him about it everything will be clear to him.

He didn't understand his mistake = even when the mistake was pointed out to him he did not understand what was wrong.

In a few cases either *realize* or *understand* can be used with no difference in meaning.

E.g. I realize / understand how you feel. They don't seem to realize / understand the importance of hard work.

realizable adj – that can be realized.

realization n – realizing (of a plan, one's ambitions or hopes); act of exchanging property for money.

4. require v – 1. need; depend on for success, etc. We require extra help. Does this machine require much attention?

2. *require sth. (of sb.); require sb. to do sth.; require that ...* – demand; insist upon as a right or by authority. Students are required to take three papers in English literature. What do you require of me?

Synonyms: *to require, to demand.*

To require means to ask for, to need.

To demand means to ask for with authority, to insist on having.

E.g. The matter requires great care. The policeman demanded his name. The strikers demanded immediate payment.

requirement n – sth. required or needed: fulfil the requirements of the law; meet sb's requirements.

5. blame v – *blame sb. (for sth.); blame sth. on sb.* – fix on sb. the responsibility for sth. done (badly or wrongly) or not done. Bad workmen often blame their tools. He blamed his teacher for his failure.

be to blame – deserve censure. Who is to blame for starting the fire?

Synonyms: *to blame, to accuse, to charge.*

All these terms denote “to declare a person guilty of a fault or offence”.

To accuse and *to charge* are interchangeable when we speak of a serious offence, such as breaking the law. However, *to charge* is more official and is the term used at court.

E.g. He was charged with murder.

To charge is used on less official occasions as well.

E.g. He charged me with neglecting my duties.

To accuse may also be used at court but in a somewhat less formal statement.

E.g. She was accused of taking money.

Note: *To accuse* is always followed by the preposition “of”.

To charge is always followed by the preposition “with”.

The noun *charge* is followed by the preposition “of”.

E.g. She didn’t like being accused of cruelty. He was brought before the court with a charge of theft. He was charged with theft.

To blame is used when the offence is less serious, when we say that a person or thing is the cause of something bad or wrong.

E.g. Don’t blame it on me. Who is to blame for starting the fire? We shouldn’t blame children for the mistakes of their parents.

blame n – 1. responsibility for sth. done (badly or wrongly) or not done. Where does the blame lie for our failure.

bear / take the blame (for sth.) – take the responsibility.

put / lay the blame on sb. (for sth.) – make him responsible.

2. finding fault. If you don’t do the work well, you will incur blame.

Synonyms: *blame, fault, guilt.*

All three words denote responsibility for a misdeed or something wrong. Our choice of the particular word largely depends on the seriousness of the act.

Guilt (n) is the strongest of the three words and should be used when speaking of a serious offence or crime.

E.g. He killed his son and has already confessed his guilt.

Guilty (adj), as: a guilty look, a guilty conscience, guilty behaviour etc.

Fault and *blame* are synonyms when used in the sense of responsibility for a bad result or something wrong. Both “to be to blame” and “to be someone’s fault” are used to denote responsibility for deeds of a less serious nature than “to be guilty”.
E.g. If we are late for the concert, it’ll be your fault. It’s not your fault that you were born a Catholic. He is to blame for it. The whole blame is mine.

Guilty is used in court terminology in the following expressions: to plead guilty, to plead not guilty, to be found guilty: She had been found guilty of a great breach of duty.

blameless adj – free from blame or faults; innocent. I am blameless in this matter.

blamelessly adv

6. **bear** v – 1. carry: bear a heavy load.
2. have; show: bear the marks / signs / traces of blows / wounds / punishment; a document that bears your signature; bear no / some / not much / little resemblance to sb. or sth.
3. have; be known by: bear a good character; a family that bore an ancient and honoured name.
4. *bear oneself* – a) carry oneself in a specified way. He bears himself like a soldier.
b) behave; conduct oneself. He bore himself with dignity in these difficult circumstances.
5. *bear (against / towards)* – have in the heart or mind: bear a grudge against sb., bear no malice towards sb.
6. bring; provide.
bear a hand – help.
bear witness (to sth.) – (fig.) provide evidence; speak in support: actions that bear witness to his courage. Will you bear witness (for me) that I am innocent?
bear false witness (against sb.) – give false evidence.
7. support; sustain. The ice is too thin to bear your weight. Who will bear the responsibility / expense?
8. endure; tolerate; put up with. I can’t bear (the sight of) that old man. The pain was almost more than he could bear.
9. give birth to: bear a child. She has borne him six sons.

Synonyms:

I. *to bear, to carry, to wear.*

To carry – to convey from one place to another.

E.g. He carried a parcel under his arm. He usually carries an umbrella under his arm.

Collocations: to carry germs / responsibility.

To bear – to support the weight of a thing which is at rest; to suffer, to tolerate, to endure. *To bear* can be used as a formal or poetic term of to carry.

E.g. Be careful, the ice may not bear your weight. The roof was borne by a number of stone pillars. This tree does not bear any fruit. He bore his pain patiently.

Collocations: to bear arms; to bear a title / name; to bear witness; (a document may) bear a signature; to bear the cost / expense; to bear great sorrow; to bear interest / an inscription; to be more than one can bear.

To wear – to have on the body (with reference to clothing, adornment etc.); to exhibit; to show on the face) in one's manners.

E.g. She wore a pair of white gloves.

Collocations: to wear a hat / shoes / spectacles; to wear a beard; to wear a smile / sour look etc.

II. *to bear, to endure, to suffer, to stand, to tolerate.*

To bear, to endure, to suffer, to stand, to tolerate agree in meaning when they denote "to sustain or undergo something painful or trying". They imply "patience in sustaining some hardship, misfortune, some difficulty, some unpleasant state, or condition".

E.g. 1. I've so many misfortunes, I suppose I can *bear* this too. 2. The colonel tells you that the enemy *has suffered* severe losses. 3. For the remainder of the meal he *endured* the anguish of talking to one person when he longed to talk to another. 4. I can't *stand* the thought of leaving. 5. I won't *tolerate* your leaving the room in such a mess.

These verbs, besides, have some other shade of meaning. *To bear, to endure, to stand* may be used in the meaning of "an unwillingness to put up with something disagreeable".

E.g. 1. He stood there laughing, I could not bear it, it made me frightened, ill. I could not stand it.

2. She could not endure seeing animals treated cruelly.

To endure, besides, means “to suffer without complaining”; it suggests a great firmness of mind and spirit.

E.g. If help does not come, we must endure to the end.

To stand implies “the ability to resist, to withstand”, as, to stand the attack (ill-treatment etc.).

E.g. She stood the shock well.

To suffer, to tolerate suggests patience with unpleasant people, as, “to suffer (tolerate) fools”.

E.g. He suffered this girl in patience. We still tolerate among us numbers of aliens who take the bread out of the mouths of our own people.

To tolerate, besides, implies “overcoming one’s own antagonism to something or somebody that is unpleasant or distasteful to one.”

E.g. He can’t tolerate fat.

bearable adj – that can be borne or endured.

bearer n – person employed to carry sth.

bearing n – 1. way of behaving; way of standing, walking, etc.: a man of noble / soldierly bearing. His kindly bearing caused all the children to like him.

2. possibility of being endured; endurance. His conduct was beyond (all) bearing.

3. (pl) relative position; direction.

get / take one’s bearings – find the direction of a ship’s course; find one’s position by looking round for landmarks, etc.

lose / be out of one’s bearings – be lost; (fig.) be puzzled.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

I. Consult a dictionary and practise the pronunciation of the following words:

haze, to award, talisman, entreaty, surgery, expectancy, tightly, vicinity, enteric, apprehension, typhoid, nystagmus, chronic, arthritis, ailments, scrutiny, probation, to obsess, to reel, to loathe,

dispenser, straggler, reluctantly, urgently, to conceal, aggravating, half-slewed, grudging, Presbyterian, to comply, microscope, oil-immersion, cluster, bacterium – bacteria, naked, agar, alert, genuineness, paratyphoid, endemic, sewer, to welsh, scepticism, cynicism, pretext, derisively, detest.

II. Explain the polysemy of the words and phrases in italics and then translate the sentences.

A. 1. This is the *case* for the director to decide. 2. It's a clear *case* of carelessness. 3. I saw at least three similar *cases* of children dying due to the lack of water when I was working in India. 4. *Cases* of human error are being reported all the time. 5. Sometimes earthquakes cause tidal waves and, as in Japan's *case*, these can be deadly. 6. Recent government spending on the schools is a classical *case* of too little, too late. 7. Some women have managed to achieve success in football. *A case in point* is Anne Spencer. 8. In John's *case*, the first he knew of any problems in the company was when a redundancy notice arrived on his desk. 9. The worst *cases* were sent to hospital. 10. The *case* will be tried tomorrow. 11. He made a good *case* for his project. 12. Let's hear the *case* for and against.

B. 1. Sadly, the men *bore* the dead child to his mother. 2. The rise in the cost of living *bears* hard on old people living on fixed incomes. 3. What a remarkable resemblance she *bears* to the famous actress! 4. A line of servants entered, *bearing* food to the guests. 5. The finished book *bears* no resemblance to the material I sent. 6. The letter that arrived in the morning *bore* the signature of his father. 7. He must *bear* responsibility for the whole affair. 8. In this crucial situation he *bore* himself courageously. 9. She *bore* him a son. 10. Our plans have *borne* fruit. 11. I am *born* Latvian. 12. The ice *is bearing* sledges now. 13. These beams can *bear* a heavy load. 14. The child *bore* the operation well.

C. 1. You always *blame* someone else when things go wrong. 2. I think your plan is crazy, so don't *blame* me if it doesn't work! 3. The investigators *blamed* the driver for the train crash. 4. Whenever children behave badly, people always try and *blame* it on the teacher. 5. Hurry up! It's me who'll get the *blame* if we're late.

6. The airline usually gets *blamed* if there is a major disaster. 7. The other boys all ran away, and Billy got the *blame* for the accident. 8. After their separation he laid the *blame* on his wife. 9. Farmers have laid the *blame* for their problems entirely on government policies. 10. You can't always shift the *blame* onto your secretary. 11. You can't *blame* her for getting a divorce, her husband always treated her badly. 12. I can see you're annoyed with me for being late and I don't *blame* you. 13. There will be an enquiry to find out who is to *blame* for the train crash. 14. She was as much to *blame* for the break up of their marriage as he was. 15. I didn't train hard enough so I know I've only got myself to *blame* for not winning the race.

D. 1. Andrew *realized* that the work would be difficult but he undertook to do it. 2. Do you *realize* the importance of this decision? 3. He saw Harris quickly frown, as though *realizing* he'd been talking too much. 4. In a very short time I *realized* that the London I had come back to was a different place from the London I had left in 1915. 5. I at once *realized* what I had said. 6. He doesn't *realize* the problems. 7. Finally our hopes have been *realized*. 8. I suddenly *realized* that the thumping noise was the sound of my own heart. 9. It wasn't until she was fifty miles along the road that Helen *realized* she'd lost her way. 10. "Is there a problem between you two?" said Beatrice, not *realizing* how right she was. 11. Only the doctor *realized* the seriousness of Tom's illness. 12. The *realization* that he would soon be leaving home for the last time filled him with a confusing mixture of emotions. 13. I hope you *realize* you have done a great deal of harm. 14. He never *realized* just how lucky he was. 15. He must *realize* that I have serious personal problems just now. 16. "It's my birthday today." "Oh, I didn't *realize*. I should have bought you a card."

E. 1. Do you *require* anything else? 2. This plant *requires* frequent watering. 3. You are *required* to be there by 9 o'clock. 4. Does he have the *required* qualifications? 5. This project meets all our *requirements*. 6. The amount of time that is *required* to finish the test varies from student to student. 7. We regret to inform you that we do not feel you have the level of experience *required* for this post. 8. Add more salt to the soup as *required*. 9. The average daily food *requirement* for an adult is between 2000 and 3000

calories. 10. The main *requirements* for the job are good eyesight and a high level of physical fitness. 11. The purity of the water in the town did not come up to the minimum *requirements*. 12. Driving *requires* a great deal of concentration. 13. The toys have to meet tough safety *requirements* before they can be sold to children. 14. People do not realize that they are requested to declare their earnings because they are legally *required* to.

F. 1. Could I have a *list* of the hotels in this town? 2. The other *list* shows you which car is safest. 3. If it is not on the *list* we don't sell it. 4. I only bought what was on my shopping *list*. 5. After the accident the airline issued a *list* of the crew members and passengers. 6. The English course is very popular so there might be a waiting *list*. 7. Peter will be away on the day of the wedding so we can cross him off the guest *list*. 8. She made a *list* of all the things she had to take on holiday. 9. As I get older I have to keep making *lists* in case I forget something. 10. A *list* has been made of all those students who didn't come. 11. The guidebook *lists* over 1000 hotels and restaurants. 12. He proceeded *to list* all her faults one by one. 13. The writers in the article *are listed* in alphabetical order at the end.

III. Give your own sentences or situations with the following word combinations and translate the combinations into Latvian. Is it always possible to give a word for word translation?

1. That's not the case; a clear case of cheating; six cases of influenza; just in case; in case of fire; in any case; in no case; in this case; the case for the defendant; the common case; the possessive case; the objective case.

2. To bear a heavy load; to bear the traces of wounds; to bear little resemblance; to bear a good character; to bear oneself; to bear a grudge against sb.; to bear no malice towards sb.; to bear witness; to bear the expense; to bear the pain; to bear down the enemy; to bear a child; the bearer of the litter; a bearer of the flag; a good bearer; a man of noble bearing; to get one's bearings; to be out of one's bearings.

3. To blame sb.; to blame the teacher; to blame oneself; who is to blame; to bear the blame; to take the blame; to put the blame on sb.; to be blameless.

4. To realize one's error; to realize one's hopes; to realize one's ambitions; to realize bonds; to realize the problem; to realize difficulties; to come to the realization.

5. To require extra help; to require attention; to require one's presence; to require to do sth.; required reading; requirements of the law; to meet the requirements of sb. / sth.; to satisfy a requirement; legal requirements; minimum requirements; admission requirements.

6. A shopping list; to put on the list; to take off the list; list price; the active list; the free list; to make a list of; to list sb's name; to list all engagements; to head a list; to read down a list; an alphabetic list; guest list; waiting list; casualty list; the list on priorities.

IV. What nouns can you add to the following adjectives?

bearable; blameless; blame-worthy; realizable.

V. Paraphrase the italicized words and phrases by using suitable phrases.

1. case

1. There were several *instances* of scarlet fever in the district last month. 2. Leave the key under the mat *if it should happen* that I come home before you do. 3. *In the event of* fire, ring the fire alarm. 4. I may not have time to help you tomorrow but *whatever happens* you may depend on my help on Sunday. 5. I saw at least three similar *instances* of children dying due to the lack of water when I was working in India. 6. The airline received about 500 complaints last year. In most *instances* these concerned delays and cancellations.

2. bear

1. A messenger arrived, *carrying* a letter from the ambassador. 2. At the head of the procession a group of dark-suited men *carried* the coffin into the church. 3. My leg really hurts – I'm not sure how much longer I can *stand* it. 4. The trial was a great scandal but she *stood* it with courage and dignity. 5. The baby's narrow neck looked too fragile *to support* the weight of its head. 6. Don't cry, I can't *stand* it. 7. He *couldn't stand* the thought of his wife leaving him. 8. I *can't stand* thinking about the loneliness he must have felt.

9. The only things that made her life *tolerable* were the occasional visits from her grandchildren. 10. The pressure of all this fame was scarcely *tolerable*. 11. His leg hasn't quite healed yet, but pain-killers make it *tolerable*. 12. Turn the radio off. I can't *stand* that noise. 13. I can't *stand* to read her old letters. 14. "You're always welcome to stay here, you know." "Thanks, I'll *keep* it in mind." 15. *Keeping* in mind how much we spent last year, I think we should start making cuts. 16. The ruins of temples, theatres and villas all *show* the past greatness of Roman Empire.

3. blame

1. Patricia never said anything, but secretly she *reproached* her sister for the child's death. 2. Hurry up! It's me who'll *take the rap* if we're late. 3. He must realize that he's done something wrong and that he'll have *to take responsibility* for it. 4. The press will put all the *responsibility* on the president for the breakdown of negotiations. 5. He is going to look for a better job. I don't *criticize* him. 6. If children are disobedient, the *fault* lies with their parents. 7. If anything had gone wrong, he would have had to take the *responsibility*. 8. The entire *responsibility* for it all will fall on her.

4. realize

1. I soon *became aware* that I was wasting time. 2. You don't seem *to recognize* how serious the situation is. 3. He *was not aware of* his mistake until it was too late. 4. I *understand* how you feel. 5. They don't seem *to understand* the importance of hard work. 6. He was advised *to sell* the shares as quickly as possible. 7. He never *converted* his life long ambition *into reality*. 8. Do you *understand* the importance of this decision?

5. require

1. This meeting will *want* your presence as it will discuss matters that are of utmost importance to the department. 2. I don't mind a little extra work, but as you know it *wants* time and therefore you mustn't expect a definite answer too soon. 3. All participants *are wanted* to be there at 10 a.m. 4. Small children *need* a lot of care and attention. 5. Do they *want* any other documents? 6. I have done everything that was *demanding* of me. 7. This is the list of books *of obligatory* reading. You must read them for your exam in

English literature. 8. These flowers *need* much light. 9. If you *need* anything, just inform us about it. 10. What *is needed* to enter this university?

VI. Supply the appropriate particles.

1. He has been able to bear ... all the opposition. 2. They saw me bearing them and they called out to me to keep out of their way. 3. She herself was to blame ... the whole thing. 4. The old woman blamed the boys ... the broken window. 5. I don't want to bear the blame ... your mistakes. 6. He bore a sword ... his side. 7. She bears little resemblance ... her mother.

VII. Fill in the appropriate synonyms.

a) to realize, to understand

1. Do you ... what time it is? 2. Do you ... this word? 3. I don't ... modern art. 4. He suddenly ... that it was his mother's birthday. 5. Do you ... that you need help? 6. I can't ... why he behaves like that. 7. I ... that you have a typewriter for sale. 8. I ... that it's rather late but perhaps it would be better to discuss the matter now. 9. Many years later his plan was ... 10. Then she ... that he was serious about resigning. 11. I didn't ... his explanation. 12. You don't seem to ... how difficult life is for them. 13. I never ... before how old the building is. 14. He ... about 200 lats on the sale of china. 15. Everyone should be made to ... the importance of environment protection. 16. I didn't ... how serious the situation was. 17. I didn't feel well I could not ... what was wrong with me. 18. Read Poe's biography and you will ... why some of his works are so pesimistic. 19. Andrew did not ... how much Christine meant to him until after her death. 20. The book helps us to ... the part the Impressionists played in the history of art. 21. Oh, I didn't ... it was so late. I must be going. 22. I ... the problem but I don't know how to solve it.

b) to accuse, to charge, to blame

1. He was at a loss; it was the first time that anyone had ... him of cowardice. 2. I hope you don't ... him with having taken the money. 3. I know you had to wait for me a long time. If you married another man I don't ... you. 4. When anything went wrong in the house the step-mother always ... poor Cinderella ... it. 5. The man was

murder, but he pleaded not guilty. 6. Don't ... other people when the fault is your own. 7. I was to ... as much as Ivory. 8. You have been ... bad conduct in a professional way.

c) to carry, to bear, to wear

1. I can't ... to look at battle scenes on TV. 2. You ... an honoured name. 3. Can you ... all those figures in your head? 4. She ran as fast as her legs would ... her. 5. Mini skirts are being ... mainly by young girls. 6. The stone ... an inscription of great historical significance. 7. Oh, Dad! I'm so tired! Can you ... me? 8. Don't ... those black shoes with your new coat. 9. I'll ... the cost if you do the work. 10. To ... coals to Newcastle is an old saying. 11. We ... less in summer than in winter. 12. Women always complain that they have nothing ... 13. Oh, stop talking! It's more than I can ... 14. Her voice ... right across the country. 15. You will ... witness that I tried to resist temptation. 16. It is no longer Paris that dictates what women will ... 17. That man ... great responsibility. 18. The girl's face ... an expression of surprise.

d) blame, fault, charge, guilt or guilty of

1. A letter was sent to Peter summoning him to attend the August meeting of the Committee to answer the ... brought ... him. 2. He was arrested on an old ... of desertion. 3. After he confessed his ... he was brought to trial. 4. It is my ... that he failed to meet us at the station; I forgot to send him a telegram. 5. Don't take the ... upon yourself. It was I who pushed you when you were holding the vase. 6. Though she was strongly suspected of murder her ... was not established. 7. Whose ... is it that the book is torn and dirty? 8. He took the ... for the failure of the experiment upon himself. 9. To confess one's crime is to acknowledge one's ... 10. If you don't do the work, you get the ... 11. Some readers pity Soames and say that he wasn't such a bad fellow after all; it wasn't his ... if he was not lovable; Irene ought to have forgiven him. 12. The jury found the prisoner ... murder. 13. Nina tried to comfort her friend. But Elisabeth felt it was all Nina's ... 14. We both felt ... because of our part in his trouble. 15. The door was left open and the dog ran away. Whose ... is it? 16. Don't lay ... on me, the wrong is not of my doing. 17. The young man was conscious of his ... and lost his peace of mind. 18. It is not my ... that the letter has not yet been typed.

VIII. Account for the use of the synonyms *to bear, to endure, to suffer, to stand, to tolerate.*

1. If you could *bear* it there's no reason why others shouldn't.
2. Well, I'm not exactly a poor man. I can't *bear* the thought of your going to seed in a rotten little hole like this. 3. "Well," she said, "she asked for the truth, and I let her have it; ... She *stood* it very well."
4. You've got to have them, I suppose, to help you *to endure* living with me. 5. Lady Feverel was jealous of her husband's friend. By degrees she *tolerated* him. 6. When will this wind stop? I can't *stand* much more of it. 7. You don't understand. There are things the flesh has *to endure*, and things the spirit too must endure ...
8. Mr. Crerar and most of the officers *were suffering* the aftereffects of last night's party. 9. I don't want you *to bear* this alone ... I want to share it with you. 10. The room would *bear* witness to our presence. 11. But the only thing they *would not stand* was back answers. 12. His mother wrote that she could not *bear* to be parted from him any longer.

IX. Translate into English.

1. Es neesmu vainīgs, ka jūs nokavējāt vilcienu. 2. Nevajag uzvelt savu vainu citiem. 3. Mums nav jāizlemj, kuram no viņiem taisnība un kurš vainīgs. 4. Kurš par to vainojams? 5. Ar vainīgu izskatu viņa ienāca istabā un atzinās, ka visu laiku slēpusi no mums patiesību. 6. Viņa domāja, ka nodevībā vainojams Artūrs. 7. Es uzņemos visu vainu par nodarīto. 8. Kas vainojams par to, ka tu saņēmi sliktu at-zīmi? 9. Vai tad tā ir šuvējas vaina, ka kleita iznākusi tik īsa? Tu taču zini, ka drēbes bija maz. 10. Šīs zādzības izmeklēšana vilkās ilgi, jo grūti bija atrast vainīgo. 11. Viņš jutās vainīgs un nevarēja skatīties citiem acīs. 12. No jūsu teiktā var secināt, ka vainīga ir viņa. 13. Tiesa atzina apsūdzēto par vainīgu. 14. Viņu ilgi mocīja vainas apziņa, un beidzot viņš pats paziņoja, ka izdarījis šo noziegumu. 15. Nepārmetiet man, ja pīrāgs neizdosies, es to cepu pirmo reizi. 16. Es jums nepārmetu nokavēšanos, jums ir nopietni iemesli. 17. Viņu nedrīkst apsūdzēt par zādzību, iekams nebūs savākti visi pierādījumi. 18. Viņu apsūdzēja huligānismā. 19. Nepārmetiet to viņam, tā nav viņa vaina. 20. Tiesa atzina apsūdzēto par vainīgu dedzināšanā.

X. Answer the questions.

1. What do doctors say if they have five patients down with flu?
2. When do we usually ring the fire brigade up?
3. Does your family bear an ancient name?
4. Would you bear a grudge against your very best friend if there had been some misunderstanding between you? Why? Why not?
5. What might happen if you walk on the ice which is too thin to bear your weight?
6. If you are laughed at, can you bear it?
7. Is the teacher supposed to bear responsibility for children's upbringing? Why? Why not?
8. Do you bear pain (heat, cold) well?
9. What should a person do if he / she gets lost in some place?
10. Are you always ready to bear the blame for the wrong you have done?
11. Why do you think students often blame teachers for their failure?
12. Who is to blame for the growth of the children's crime?
13. What would you blame for the low birth rate in the country?
14. What are your ambitions in life? How do you hope to realize them?
15. If we realize our errors what should we do?
16. What are the students required to do to enter this university?
17. Do the study courses at the university meet your requirements? If not – why?
18. If a person is absent-minded would you advise him / her make a list of things what he / she must do? Why?
19. When is it necessary to make a shopping list?
20. Do you list your engagements? When? Why?

XI. In what circumstances would you say:

1. You'd better take the umbrella just in case.
2. In case of emergency, call the police station.
3. The girl bears little resemblance to her mother.
4. Don't bear hatred towards people!
5. How could you bear to look at her?
6. I'm to blame for it all!
7. I blame you for refusing to help your own parents.
8. I soon realized I was wasting my time.
9. I believe your hopes will be soon realized.
10. It's past bearing!
11. It doesn't bear thinking about!
12. Do you have the required qualifications?
13. I think my paper meets all the requirements.
14. This meeting requires your presence.

XII. Translate into English.

1. Vajadzības gadījumā mēs varam aizbraukt pie tevis un palīdzēt mājas celtniecībā.
2. Vēstulei ir viņa paraksts.
3. Jaunais cilvēks, kam ir ļoti neliela auto vadīšanas prakse, izraisīja šo satiksmes

negadījumu, un viņam jāuzņemas pilna atbildība par to. 4. Meitene vēl joprojām nevar apjēgt, ka viņai nav taisnība un stūrgalvīgi turas pie sava. 5. Lai apmierinātu iedzīvotāju prasības, pilsētas valde pazemināja īres maksu daudzbērnu ģimenēm. 6. Apstākļi prasa, lai mēs visi piedalītos šajā pasākumā. 7. Šķiet, ka tu neizproti situācijas nopietnību. 8. Viņam ieteica pārdot akcijas pēc iespējas ātrāk. 9. Izsolē par mēbelēm ieguva augstu cenu. 10. Skolotājs ierakstīja visu skolēnu vārdus sarakstā. 11. Viņš sastādīja visu plauktos esošo grāmatu sarakstu, lai tās nepazustu, kad tiks izsniegtas studentiem. 12. Šiem cilvēkiem atļāva apmeklēt izrādes par velti. 13. Ja nemācīsies, viņa izkritīs eksāmenā, un tādā gadījumā varēs vainot tikai sevi. 14. Šajā palātā ievietoti tikai staigājošie slimnieki. 15. Pilsētā jau ir vairāki gripas saslimšanas gadījumi. 16. Par laimi man jāatzīst, ka šoreiz viņš ir pilnīgi bez vainas. 17. Komanda sacensībās zaudēja, un visu vainu uzvēla trenerim. 18. Šis bērns ir tik nerātns, ka tas vairs nav izturams. 19. Visur viņš izturējās ar cieņu. 20. Lai gan viņai jau bija pāri 60, viņa izskatījās jaunāka par saviem gadiem!

TEXT EXERCISES

I. Answer the questions.

1. How was Andrew Manson getting ready for his first patient?
2. Why did he want to look at the Hunter Gold Medal awarded to him as the best student in clinical medicine?
3. When was the morning surgery over?
4. What did he do after it?
5. How many patients did he visit that morning?
6. What were the symptoms of these cases?
7. What disease did Andrew diagnose?
8. How did his evening surgery proceed?
9. Why couldn't he enjoy it?
10. What decision did he come to finally?
11. Why did he want to see Denny?
12. Was Denny surprised to see Manson?
13. How did Andrew feel about this visit?
14. What did they discuss?
15. What did Denny show Manson?
16. What was the origin of the epidemic?
17. Who was to blame for not preventing the outbreak of typhoid fever?
18. Did Andrew change his attitude to Denny? Why?

II. Pick out from the text words and phrases bearing on:

- 1) diseases, symptoms;
- 2) treatment;
- 3) medical equipment and research

III. Find Latvian for:

to prize sth.; to restore one's confidence; morning / evening surgery; a list of visits; painful expectancy; an odd expression; immediate vicinity; cases of enteric; to have an outbreak of typhoid fever on one's hands; minor ailments of humanity; to be on probation; obsessed by the major issue; to reach one's decision; to write prescriptions; to sound chests; to loathe; superior devil; a prolonged and aggravating stare; to conquer one's temper and one's pride; not to know the ropes; to make a grudging gesture; a burst slipper; a jerk of one's head; rodshaped clusters of the bacteria; to forstall criticism; jack-of-all-trades; a naked eye; cold and bitter irony; rush of indignation; a lazy, evasive incompetent, pious swine; cold and measured cynicism; to have no pretext; indications of relief.

Answer the questions:

1. What topic are these phrases mainly concerned with? Why?
2. Which of these phrases are used in the text in a figurative sense? Can you explain their meaning?
3. Do these phrases characterize a colloquial or literary speech?

IV. Retell the text and then give its summary.

V. Make up and act out the dialogues between:

- 1) Andrew and his patients;
- 2) Andrew and Jenkins;
- 3) Andrew and Denny.

VI. Speak on the main character of the novel. Do you think he is a good doctor? Why?

VII. Speak on Denny. Is he a good professional? Why?

VIII. Do you feel the mood of growing tension in the extract? What events promote it?

IX. What turn will the events take and how will the relations between the two doctors develop further?

DISCUSSION EXERCISES

I. Read texts A, B.

A. A THANKFUL PATIENT

Years ago a dentist came to practise in a country village. But although he was a clever, honest little man who understood his work, not a single patient came to him.

The country people preferred to take their aching teeth to the village blacksmith, who was willing to pull them out, though he sometimes very nearly pulled their heads off too.

The poor dentist began to despair when, late one dark night, a loud knock was heard upon his door.

“Are you the dentist?” a big man asked.

“Yes, Sir, I am.”

“Then come along, quick; our Alice is crazy with toothache, poor girl.”

Wondering why ‘our Alice’ had not come herself, but not wishing to lose a patient, the dentist got his bag of instruments together quickly and hurried away with his visitor.

He was surprised when the man led him to a travelling circus. But much greater was his astonishment when he was taken into a large tent and found that ‘our Alice’ was the circus elephant, an animal almost as big as a cottage. Trembling, the little dentist examined her immense jam, and found a loose, inflamed tooth, which he took out with so much skill and gentleness that Alice who had refused food for days, began to chew hay with enjoyment.

“And how much to pay?” asked the thankful master.

“Nothing, I am glad I have put the poor beast out of her pain,” said the dentist; and he hurried home, happy to get away with his life.

The next day a free pass for the circus came with ‘Alice’s compliments’.

That night the dentist with his family took their places in the front row to watch the performance. There were shouts of joy when big Alice marched into the circus ring, and cries of surprise when she suddenly stood still before the little dentist, trumpeted joyfully, then curled her trunk gently round him, and, raising him over the heads of his frightened family, placed him on her back.

Like all elephants, she never passed a friend, and here was the kind man who had taken away her toothache.

When the manager came forward and explained why the little dentist was so honoured, there was a roar of delight from the crowd, and from that day he had plenty of patients.

B. AMATEUR DOCTORS

Because medical costs are rising so fast in Washington, more and more people are diagnosing their own illnesses or, worse still, those of their friends. The government would do well to make a study of how these nonprofessional diagnoses are affecting the nation's health picture.

The other day I had a cold. It was like that. I was sneezing, coughing and looking mournfully at my wife. I called my secretary at the office and said I wouldn't be in because I felt lousy.

"You must have one of those 'eight-hour things' that's going all around town," she said. "You'll feel perfectly well tomorrow."

Eight hours seemed to be a reasonable time to have a cold, and I was looking forward to staying in bed, particularly since *the Yankees* and *Red Sox* were playing a crucial game to get into the American League playoffs.

My sister called, and I told her I had one of those 'eight-hour things' that's going all around.

"Are you sure it's only an 'eight-hour thing'?" she asked. "It could be the '24-hour bug'. Harold had it last week. Do you have any fever?"

"A little."

"That's the '24-hour bug' for sure. Drink lots of fluids and take aspirin, and you'll be able to shake it off."

I really hadn't counted on staying in bed for 24 hours, but it's stupid to fight a bug.

My other sister called up 10 minutes later. "Edith says you've got a '24-hour bug'."

"I don't know if it's a bug or just a cold."

"Is your nose red from blowing it?"

"Yah, sure it is. Why do you ask?"

"Then you don't have a '24-hour bug'. You have a '48-hour virus'."

"My secretary said all I had was an 'eight-hour thing'. How come you moved it up to 48 hours?"

"The 'eight-hour thing' is entirely different. You feel funny but your nose doesn't get red when you blow it. The '24-hour bug' has all the symptoms of the 'eight-hour' one, except that you cough a lot. The '48-hour virus' makes you sneeze, cough and perspire while you're sleeping. You have to stay in bed for two days."

"But I can't stay in bed for two days."

"Look," my sister said. "If you don't want medical advice, don't ask me."

I think I might have been all right except that my secretary told Healy I was home with the flu.

He called, of course. "I feel for you," he said. "You won't be able to shake it off for two weeks. If it were a winter cold I'd say you'd be better in five, maybe six days. But you have an October cold. It's almost impossible to get rid of. You hear my voice? It's been like this since August."

"But suppose my cold goes away in 24 hours?"

"That's when it can become the most dangerous. You think it's gone away and then a week later you wake up and it's back with a vengeance. I'd rather have a two-week bout with a chest cold than a '24-hour bugs' which sneaks up on you like a thief in the night."

Word travels fast in Washington, and Elfin of Newsweek was terse and to the point. "Healy tells me you have an incurable form of pneumonia."

"Either that," I said, "or an 'eight-hour thing' or a '24-hour bug' or a '48-hour virus' or a two-week bout with the flu or a simple cold. I'm waiting for another opinion right now."

"From whom?"

"My druggist. He says there's a lot of it going around."

“What's going around?”

“You name it, and he says he's never seen so much of it going around.”

Art Buchwald

II. Make up questions on the texts and ask your fellow students to answer them.

III. Discuss the problems and situations in the texts.

IV. Read the following anecdotes and then tell them to your fellow students.

1. A high-powered psychiatrist in New York was taking on a new patient. “I'm a very busy man,” he explained, “and the first interview is always one-sided because the patient just tells me everything he wants me to know. Now if I can get that down and hear it at my own convenience it's a great help. So I use this tape recorder here. You sit right beside it, I switch on and I leave you, and you just go on talking until you've finished all you want to say. Is that clear?” The patient said it was and the machine was started. Five minutes later the psychiatrist was surprised to see the patient leaving the building so he went after him. “You've not said much into my tape recorder, have you?” he asked. “Well,” the man replied, “you see I also am very, very busy, and you are not the only psychiatrist I've consulted. If you will go back to your surgery you will see, sitting next to your tape recorder and telling it everything I want to say, my little dictaphone!”
2. The man was suffering from a bronchial attack, and as a result of it he was unable to speak above a whisper. The illness was slight, but painful, and he decided to call at the residence of the doctor who had just moved to town. The patient appeared one evening at the doctor's front door, rang the bell, and after a short wait stood facing the doctor's young and pretty wife. “Is the doctor at home?” he asked in his bronchial whisper. “No,” the young wife whispered in reply. “Come right on in.”

3. "Doctor," she said loudly, bouncing into the room, "I want you to say frankly what's wrong with me."
He surveyed her from head to foot. "Madam," he said at length, "I've just three things to tell you."
"First, your weight wants reducing by nearly fifty pounds."
"Second, your beauty would be improved if you used about one tenth as much rouge and lipstick."
"And, third, I'm an artist – the doctor lives on the next floor."
4. Professor: "Now, Mr. Jones, assuming you were called to attend a patient who had swallowed a coin, what would be your method of procedure?"
Young medico: "I'd send for a preacher, sir. They'll get money out of anyone."
5. **Empty Head**
"Mummy, I've got a stomach ache," said Nelly, a little girl of six.
"That's because you've been without lunch. Your stomach is empty. You would feel better if you had something in it."
That afternoon the minister came to see Nelly's mother. While they talked, the minister remarked that he had been suffering all day with an awful headache.
"That's because it's empty," said Nelly. "You would feel better if you had something in it."
6. A psychiatrist board was testing the mentality of a soldier.
"Private Dean, do you ever hear voices without being able to tell who is speaking or where the voices come from?"
"Yes, Sir."
"And when does this occur?"
"When I answer the telephone."

V. Make up your own dialogues on similar situations and act them out.

VI. Read and discuss the following puns.

1. "Last week a grain of sand got into my wife's eye and she had to go to a doctor. It cost me five dollars."

“That’s nothing. Last week a fur coat got into my wife’s eye and it cost me five hundred dollars.”

to get into one’s eye: 1. iebirt acī, 2. iekrist acīs

2. “I am sorry,” said the dentist, “but you cannot have an appointment with me this afternoon. I have eighteen cavities to fill.” And he picked up his golf-bag and went out.

cavity – 1. (med.) dobums, caurums, 2. (sportā) bedrīte

fill – 1. piepildīt, 2. (med.) plombēt

to fill a cavity – 1. (med.) plombēt zobu, 2. (sportā) iemest bumbiņu bedrītē

3. “What is this kleptomania that I read so much about in the papers? Is it catching?”

“No, it is taking.”

kleptomania – kleptomānija

catching – lipīgs (par slimību)

to catch – ķert, noķert

4. “You followed my prescriptions, of course?”

“Indeed I did not, doctor, for I should have broken my neck.”

“Broken your neck!”

“Yes, for I threw your prescriptions out of a third floor window.”

prescription – 1. norādījums, rīkojums, 2. recepte

follow – klausīt (padomam, rīkojumam), 2. sekot (aiz, pa pēdām)

5. “I had a fall last night which rendered me unconscious for several hours.”

“You don’t mean it! Where did you fall?”

“I fell asleep.”

fall – kritiens

to fall asleep – aizmigt

6. “My grandfather lived to be nearly ninety and never used glasses.”

“Well, lots of people prefer to drink from a bottle.”

glasses – acenes, brilles

glass – glāze

7. "The doctor told my wife she should take exercise."
 "And is she doing it?"
 "If jumping at conclusions and running up bills can be called exercise."
to take exercise – nodarboties ar vingrošanu
jump – lekt, lēkāt
to jump at conclusions – izdarīt pārsteidzīgus secinājumus
to run up bills – taisīt parādus
8. "Why is it easier to be a clergyman than a physician?"
 "Because it is easier to preach than to practise."
clergyman – garīdznieks
physician – ārsts, mediķis
preach – 1. sludināt, 2. teorizēt
practise – 1. pielietot, 2. strādāt par ārstu
9. A boy and his mother stood looking at a dentist's show-case.
 "If I had to have false teeth, mother, I'd take that pair," said the small boy pointing.
 "Hush, Willie," interrupted the mother quickly, shaking his arm,
 "haven't I told you it's bad manners to pick your teeth in public?"
show-case – vitrīna
pick – izvēlēties
to pick one's teeth – bakstīt zobus

VII. Interpret the English proverbs and sayings and try to find their Latvian equivalents.

1. After death, the doctor.
2. Death pays all debts.
3. Good health is above wealth.
4. Like cures like.
5. Wealth is nothing without health.
6. What can't be cured, must be endured.
7. An apple a day keeps the doctor away.

VIII. Make up and act out situations using these proverbs.

IX. Give your own examples illustrating the importance of being healthy.

JUST FOR FUN

I. From a selection of application forms for insurance cited in the British Medical Journal:

1. Mother died in infancy.
2. Father went to bed feeling well, and the next morning woke up dead.
3. Grandfather died suddenly at the age of 103. Up to this time he bade fair to reach a ripe old age.
4. Applicant does not know anything about maternal posterity, except that they died at an advanced age.
5. Applicant does not know cause of mother's death, but states that she fully recovered from her last illness.
6. Applicant has never been fatally sick.
7. Father died suddenly; nothing serious.
8. Applicant's brother, who was an infant, died when he was a mere child.
9. Grandfather died from gunshot wound, caused by an arrow shot by an Indian.
10. Mother's last illness was caused from chronic rheumatism, but she was cured before death.

II. Do these quotations make you smile? Why?

III. Read the following episodes. Does their vocabulary indicate the professional activities of these people?

1. Judge (in dentist chair): "Do you swear that you will pull the tooth, the whole tooth, and nothing but the tooth."
2. Doctor (after removing his barber's appendix): "And now, my dear sir, how about a little liver or thyroid operation? And your tonsils need trimming terribly."